Lectures
in

## Particle physics

Autumn 2010, updated 2012

## Leif Jönsson

leif.jonsson@hep.lu.se


Acknowledgements: I am indebted to Hannes Jung for many contributions during the preparatory phase of these lecture notes. In the continous process of upgrading and improving the content I have profited very much from discussions and suggestions by Cecilia Jarlskog, Magnus Hansson, Albert Knutsson and Sakar Osman. All mistakes are entirely my responsibility.

## Contents

1 Introduction ..... 5
1.1 Units in High Energy Physics ..... 8
1.2 Resolving Fundamental Particles ..... 9
1.3 Relativity ..... 9
1.3.1 Lorentz Transformation ..... 10
1.3.2 Velocity Addition ..... 11
1.3.3 Momentum and Mass ..... 12
1.3.4 Energy ..... 14
1.3.5 More Relations ..... 15
1.3.6 Example of Time Dilation: The Muon Decay ..... 16
1.3.7 Four Vectors ..... 16
1.3.8 Invariant mass ..... 17
1.3.9 Reference systems ..... 18
2 Quantum Mechanics ..... 20
2.1 The Photoelectric Effect ..... 20
2.2 The Schrödinger Equation ..... 20
2.3 The Double Slit Experiment (Interference Effects) ..... 22
2.4 The Uncertainty Principle ..... 23
2.5 Spin ..... 25
2.6 Conservation Laws ..... 26
2.6.1 Leptons and Lepton Number ..... 26
2.6.2 Parity ..... 31
2.6.3 Helicity ..... 33
2.7 The Klein-Gordon Equation ..... 33
2.7.1 The Continuity Equation ..... 35
2.8 Antiparticles: The Hole Theory and Feynmans Interpretation ..... 36
2.9 The Dirac Equation ..... 37
2.10 Strangeness ..... 38
2.11 Isospin (Isotopic spin) ..... 43
3 The Forces of Nature ..... 47
3.1 Vacuum and Virtual Particles ..... 49
3.2 Electromagnetic Interaction and QED ..... 49
3.2.1 Feynamn Diagrams ..... 50
3.2.2 Electromagnetic Scattering Processes ..... 50
3.2.3 Calculation of scattering amplitudes ..... 52
3.2.4 Differential Cross Section ..... 54
3.2.5 Higher Order Contributions to ee Scattering ..... 57
3.2.6 Regularization and Renormalization ..... 57
3.2.7 Summary of Amplitude Calculations ..... 60
3.2.8 Pair Production and Annihilation ..... 60
3.2.9 Compton Scattering ..... 63
3.3 Weak Interaction ..... 64
3.3.1 Some Other Examples of Weak Decays ..... 66
3.3.2 Properties of the Weak Force Mediators ..... 67
3.3.3 The Electroweak Theory of Weinberg and Salam ..... 69
3.3.4 The Higgs Mechanism ..... 71
3.3.5 Electroweak Interaction With Quarks ..... 76
3.3.6 Quark Mixing ..... 78
3.3.7 The Prediction of the Charm Quark ..... 81
3.4 Experimental Discoveries of Particles ..... 84
3.4.1 Resonance Particles ..... 84
3.4.2 Significance ..... 84
3.4.3 The Experimental Discovery of Charm ..... 85
3.4.4 Charmed Particles ..... 87
3.4.5 The Discovery of the tau-lepton ..... 87
3.4.6 The Discovery of the $b$-quark ..... 88
3.4.7 The Discovery of the $t$-quark ..... 89
3.4.8 The discovery of Higgs? ..... 93
3.5 Are There More Families? ..... 97
3.6 Strong Interactions ..... 98
3.6.1 More Feynman Diagrams ..... 102
3.6.2 Asymptotic Freedom and Confinement ..... 103
3.6.3 Unification of the Forces ..... 105
3.6.4 Hadronization ..... 105
3.6.5 Jets ..... 108
3.6.6 Testing QCD ..... 109
4 Deep Inelastic Scattering ..... 114
4.1 Kinematics ..... 114
4.2 The Behaviour of the Structure Function ..... 116
4.3 Scaling ..... 118
4.4 Scaling Violation ..... 119
4.5 Charged Current Processes ..... 122
4.6 Comparison of Neutral and Charged Current Processes ..... 123
5 Extensions of the Standard Model ..... 125
5.1 Grand Unified Theories ..... 125
5.2 Supersymmetry (SUSY) ..... 127
5.3 String Theories ..... 131
6 Experimental Methods ..... 135
6.1 Accelerators ..... 135
6.1.1 Linear Accelerators ..... 136
6.1.2 Circular Accelerators ..... 137
6.2 Colliders ..... 138
6.2.1 Circular Colliders ..... 138
6.2.2 Linear Colliders ..... 140
6.3 Collision Rate and Luminosity ..... 141
6.4 Secondary Beams ..... 142
6.5 Detectors ..... 144
6.5.1 Scintillation Counters ..... 144
6.5.2 Tracking Chambers ..... 145
6.5.3 Calorimeters ..... 153
6.6 Particle Identification ..... 156
6.6.1 Time of Flight ..... 157
6.6.2 Ionization Measurement ..... 157
6.6.3 Cherenkov Radiation ..... 158
7 Cosmology ..... 160
7.1 Formation of Galaxies ..... 162
7.2 The Creation of a Star ..... 163
7.3 The Death of a Star ..... 163
8 Appendix A ..... 165

## Chapter 1

## Introduction

The aim of particle physics is to find the basic building blocks of matter and to understand how they are bound together by the forces of nature. This would help us to understand how the Universe was created. The definition of the basic building blocks, or elementary particles, is that they have no inner structure; they are pointlike particles.

At the end of the 19th century it was generally believed that matter was built out of a few fundamental types of atoms. However, in the beginning of 1900 over 90 different varieties of atoms were known, which was an uncomfortably large number for considering the atom to be fundamental. Already in the late 1890's J.J. Thompson found that by applying an electric field between two electrodes, contained in a cathod ray tube, electrons were emitted when the cathod was heated. This was the first indication that the atoms are not indivisable and led Thompson to propose what was called the 'plum pudding' model, in which the electrons are evenly distributed in a soup of positive charge. Around the same time W. Röntgen found that a new form of penetrating radiation was emitted if a beam of electrons was brought to hit a piece of matter. The radiation, which was called X-rays, was proven to be electromagnetic radiation but with a wavelength much shorter than visible light. In France H. Becquerel together with P. and M. Curie observed that a radiation with properties similar to X-rays were emitted spontaneously from a piece of Uranium. In the beginning of the 20th century the cloud chamber, or expansion chamber, was developed. It causes condensation of a supersaturated vapour into drops along the path of an ionizing particle passing through the gas volume of the detector. This happens as a result of an adiabatic expansion by which the temperature of the vapour decreases and droplets are grown by condensation along the particle track. The cloud chamber enabled more accurate studies of this radition and revealed that there were three different types of radiation; $\alpha$-particles, $\beta$-radiation and $\gamma$-radiation. The $\alpha$-particles turned out to be identical to $H e^{4}$ nuclei, the $\gamma$-radiation is electromagnetic radiation with even shorter wavelenths than X-rays and $\beta$-radiation is simlply electrons. The discovery of radioactivity opened up the possibility to perform more systematic studies of matter. Thus, in 1911 E. Rutherford set up an experiment were $\alpha$-particles from a radioactive source were allowed to hit a thin gold foil and the deflection of the $\alpha$-particles was observed. From the unexpectedly large deflection of some of the $\alpha$-particles he concluded that the positive charge of the atom had to be concentrated to a small volume ( $10^{-15}$ meter) in the centre of the atom and that the electrons were orbiting around this nucleus, defining the size of the atom to $10^{-10}$ meter. This can be regarded as the start of modern particle physics. The discovery of Rutherford led to the atomic model of Niels Bohr who realized
that the nucleus of the atom must contain positively charged particles, protons. In 1932 James Chadwick discovered a new particle with no charge and with a mass close to the proton mass, the neutron. The neutron provided the explanation to why, for example, helium is four times as heavy as hydrogen and not just twice as heavy, as could be assumed if the nucleus contained only protons. Up to the point where the particle accelerators were developed the research was performed using cosmic rays and radioactive elements as particle sources. A historical review of the most important discoveries from that time is:

1895 W. Röntgen: The discovery of $X$-rays
1897 J.J. Thomson: The discovery of the electron
1900 H. Becquerel, P. and M Curie: Evidence for $\alpha, \beta$ and $\gamma$ radioactivity
1905 A. Einstein: The photon was identified as the quantum of the electromagnetic field
1911 E. Rutherford: The atomic nucleus was established from the scattering of $\alpha$-particles against a thin gold foil
1919 As a consequence of the Bohr atomic model it was realized by Rutherford that the nuclues must contain particles with positive charge, protons
1932 C.D. Anderson: Discovery of the positron from the study of cosmic rays in a cloud chamber
1932 J. Chadwick: The neutron was discovered in nuclear reactions where light nuclei were bombarded with with $\alpha$-particles e.g. $\alpha+B e^{9} \rightarrow C^{12}+n$
1937 C.D. Anderson, S.H. Neddermeyer, J.C. Street, E.C. Stevenson: Discovery of the muon from cosmic rays using a cloud chamber; $\mu^{-} \rightarrow e^{-}+\overline{\nu_{e}}+\nu_{\mu}$
1947 C. Powel: Discovery of the pion in studies of cosmic rays using photographic emulsions.
In the beginning of the 1930's J.D. Crockcroft and T.S. Walton developed the first particle accelerator by using high-voltage rectifier units. This was the start of modern accelerators, which was followed by a number of new inovations to achieve increasingly higher energies, higher beam currents (number of particles per beam) and better focusing of the beams, all driven by the desire to make new physics discoveries. As new accelerators were built a large number of 'elementary' particle were found and eventually they became more than 100 like the elements of the periodic table. With the increasing number of new particles it became unlikely that they are 'elementary' and the situation called for an underlying structure. This led to the introduction of the quarks in the early 1960's.

According to our present understanding, the fundamental building blocks of nature can be subdivided into two types of particles; the quarks and the leptons, which with a common name are called fermions, having half-integer spin. These particles are bound together by the forces of nature. We have four fundamental forces, which are gravitation, electromagnetism, the weak force and the strong force. According to modern theories a force is mediated between the interacting particles via the exchange of force-mediating particles, which belong to a type of particles called bosons, having integer spin. The bosons responsible for the electromagnetic $(\gamma)$, the weak $\left(\mathrm{W}^{+}, \mathrm{W}^{-}, \mathrm{Z}^{\circ}\right)$ and the strong (gluons) forces have been confirmed experimentally, so there are good grounds to believe that also the gravitational force is mediated by a boson, called the graviton, although it hasn't been found yet. The strength of gravity is so feeble that it can be neglected in problems on the microcosmic scale at present day's energies. However, there are indications that the four forces we identify on the energy scale we have access to presently are just different manifestations of the same force such that if we go to very high energies (the

Planck scale $10^{19} \mathrm{GeV}$ ) the strength of all forces will be the same. This means that it should be possible to find a common theoretical framework to describe all four forces.

| fermions <br> half-integer spin |  | bosons <br> integer spin |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| leptons | quarks | $\gamma, \mathrm{W}^{+}, \mathrm{W}^{-}, \mathbf{Z}^{o}$, gluons |

The present status on building blocks is that six different flavours of quarks and leptons are known:

| Quarks |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| u (up) | c (charm) <br> d (down) | t (top) <br> s (strange) |
| b (bottom) |  |  |


| Leptons |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| e (electron) | $\mu$ (muon) | $\tau$ (tau) |
| $\nu_{e}$ (electron neutrino) | $\nu_{\mu}$ (muon neutrino) | $\nu_{\tau}$ (tau neutrino) |

Each quark and lepton has its antiparticle. An antiparticle has the same mass as the particle but it has the opposite electric charge. The quantum field theory which describes the interaction of fermions through the exchange of force mediating bosons is called the Standard Model (SM).
Particles which are built out of quarks are called hadrons. There are two types of hadrons, baryons, consisting of three quarks and mesons, consisting of a quark and an antiquark. Thus the baryons have half-integer spin and mesons integer spin.
A summary of the force mediators and some of their properties is given in the table below.

|  | Gravity | Weak force | Electromagnetic force | Strong force |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Mediator | graviton <br> $(\mathrm{G})$ | weak vector bosons <br> $\left(W^{+}, W^{-}, Z^{o}\right)$ | photon <br> $(\gamma)$ | gluons <br> $(\mathrm{g})$ |
| Mass | 0 | $W^{ \pm} \sim 80 \mathrm{GeV}$ <br> $Z^{o} \sim 90 \mathrm{GeV}$ | 0 | 0 |
| Range | $\infty$ | $\sim 10^{-18} \mathrm{~m}$ | $\infty$ | $\sim 10^{-15} \mathrm{~m}$ |
| Fermions affected | all <br> with mass | all | electrically charged <br> $(q u a r k s, e, \mu, \tau)$ | colour charged <br> $($ quarks $)$ |
| Relative strength | $\sim 10^{-39}$ | $\sim 10^{-6}$ | $\sim 10^{-2}$ | 1 |

The numbers specified as the relative strengths of the forces should not be taken too literally since such information can not be given unarbitrarily. A measure of the strength can be given by how strongly the force mediators couple to other particles i.e. how high the probability is that an interaction, governed by a specific force, takes place. This is equivalent to compare the lifetimes of various particles that decay via different force mediators. It is worthwhile to point out that a strong coupling leads to short lifetimes whereas weak couplings result in long lifetimes. The strength of the couplings are expressed in terms of coupling constants. However, as we will see later, the coupling strength of a force is not constant, as is indicated by the word 'coupling constant', but it varies with the distance over which the interaction takes place. These are the reasons for regarding the relative strength of the forces just as an overall indication.

### 1.1 Units in High Energy Physics

Due to the fact that elementary particles are so small, conventional mechanical units are not practical to use. Instead the basic unit is electron volt (eV), which is a measure of energy. An electron volt is the amount of kinetic energy gained by a single unbound electron when it passes through an electrostatic potential difference of one volt, in vacuum.

| Units | 1 eV (electron volt) |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | 1 keV (kilo electron volt) | $10^{3} \mathrm{eV}$ |
|  | 1 MeV (mega electron volt) | $10^{6} \mathrm{eV}$ |
|  | 1 GeV (giga electron volt) | $10^{9} \mathrm{eV}$ |
|  | 1 TeV (terra electron volt) | $10^{12} \mathrm{eV}$ |

$E^{2}=\left(m c^{2}\right)^{2}+(p c)^{2}$ relates mass, momentum and energy such that momentum is measured in $\mathrm{MeV} / \mathrm{c}$ and mass in $\mathrm{MeV} / \mathrm{c}^{2}$, for example. Energy is also related to wavelength according to $E=\hbar / \lambda$, where $\hbar=h / 2 \pi$ is Planck's constant $=6.588 \cdot 10^{-25} \mathrm{GeV} \cdot \mathrm{s}$. However, it is convenient to use natural units, where $\hbar=c=1$, which implies that mass and momentum have the dimension of energy, e.g. the mass of the electron $m_{e} \approx 0.5 \mathrm{MeV}$ and the mass of the proton $m_{p} \approx 1 \mathrm{GeV}$. Since $E=\hbar / \lambda$ we get, by setting $\hbar=1$, that energy gets the dimenstion $l_{\text {length }}{ }^{-1}$ or length gets the dimension energy ${ }^{-1}$. Further, setting $c=x / t=1$ means that length and time have the same unit. The unit of time is thus the time it takes to travel one unit of length. However, since length has the dimension energy ${ }^{-1}$, time also gets this dimension. In order to get the dimensions right in an absolute calculation the values of $\hbar$ and $c$ have to be introduced. We need a conversion factor between length and energy:
$(\hbar \cdot c)[\mathrm{MeV} \cdot \mathrm{s} \cdot \mathrm{cm} / \mathrm{s}]=197.5[\mathrm{MeV} \mathrm{fm}]$.
The probability for an interaction between two particles to occur is expressed as a cross section, which has the dimension of area.

| Cross section | barn |  | $10^{-24} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | mb | $10^{-3} \mathrm{~b}$ (millibarn) | $10^{-27} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ |
|  | $\mu \mathrm{~b}$ | $10^{-6} \mathrm{~b}$ (microbarn) | $10^{-30} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ |
|  | nb | $10^{-9} \mathrm{~b}$ (nanobarn) | $10^{-33} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ |
|  | pb | $10^{-12} \mathrm{~b}$ (picobarn) | $10^{-36} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ |
|  | fb | $10^{-15} \mathrm{~b}$ (femtobarn) | $10^{-39} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ |

In natural units, cross section $\sim(\text { length })^{2} \sim 1 /[\mathrm{GeV}]^{2}$ The conversion factor between cross section and energy is:
$(\hbar \cdot c)^{2}\left[\mathrm{GeV}^{2} \cdot \mathrm{~s}^{2} \cdot \frac{\mathrm{~cm}}{s^{2}}\right]=0.389\left[\mathrm{GeV}^{2} \cdot \mathrm{mb}\right]$.
Summary:

| Quantity | High energy units | SI-units |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| length | 1 fm | $10^{-15} \mathrm{~m}$ |
| energy | $1 \mathrm{GeV}=10^{9} \mathrm{eV}$ | $1.602 \cdot 10^{-10} \mathrm{~J}$ |
| mass, $E / \mathrm{c}^{2}$ | $1 \mathrm{GeV} / \mathrm{c}^{2}$ | $1.78 \cdot 10^{-27} \mathrm{~kg}$ |
| Planck's constant, $\hbar=h / 2 \pi$ | $6.588 \cdot 10^{-25} \mathrm{GeVs}$ | $1.055 \cdot 10^{-34} \mathrm{Js}$ |
| velocity of light, c |  | $2.998 \cdot 10^{8} \mathrm{~ms}^{-1}$ |
| $\hbar c$ | 0.1975 GeV fm | $3.162 \cdot 10^{-26} \mathrm{Jm}$ |

### 1.2 Resolving Fundamental Particles

Consider the relation between the energy and wavelength of light.

$$
E=\hbar \cdot \nu=\hbar / \lambda
$$

where $\lambda$ is measured in fermi ( $1 \mathrm{fermi}=1 \mathrm{fm}=10^{-15} \mathrm{~m}$ ). In order to resolve an object the wavelength of the light must be of the same order as the size of the object: $\lambda \sim \Delta x$. Since energy is units of MeV and length is given in units of fermi, we need the conversion factor $\hbar \cdot c$ to calculate the energy needed to resolve an object of a certain extension.

The size of an atom is around $10^{-10} \mathrm{~m} \Rightarrow E=\frac{197 \cdot 5 \cdot 10^{-15}}{10^{-10}} \approx 200 \cdot 10^{-5} \mathrm{MeV}=2 \mathrm{keV}$
The size of a proton is about $10^{-15} \mathrm{~m} \Rightarrow E=\frac{197.5 \cdot 10^{-15}}{10^{-15}} \approx 200 \mathrm{MeV}$
The size of the quarks are $<10^{-18} m \Rightarrow E>\frac{197.5 \cdot 10^{-15}}{10^{-18}} \approx 200 \mathrm{GeV}$

To resolve smaller and smaller objects we need higher and higher energy, and therefore larger and larger accelerators.

### 1.3 Relativity

The physics of macroscopic objects in our everyday life is governed by classical mechanics. However, as the objects start moving very fast the laws of classical mechanics have to be modified by special relativity. For objects being very small i.e. of the size of an atom or smaller, classical mechanics has to be replaced by quantum mechanics. In cases where the objects are both small and fast, the theory has to provide a relativistic description of quantum phenomena, which needs a quantum field theory.

1) The classical picture:

A vector in 3-dimensional space $\bar{x}=(x, y, z)$, time $t$ (the 4 th component $)$
Vectorial addition: $\bar{v}=\bar{v}_{1}+\bar{v}_{2}$
$\Rightarrow$ if $\left|\bar{v}_{1}\right| \sim c$ and $\left|\bar{v}_{2}\right| \sim c \Rightarrow\left|\bar{v}_{1}\right|+\left|\bar{v}_{2}\right| \sim 2 c>c$
i.e. violation of the fact that $c$ is the maximum possible speed.
2) Special relativity:

The basic postulate of the special theory of relativity are:
a) All reference systems are equivalent with respect to the laws of nature (the laws of nature are all the same independent of reference system).
b) The speed of light in vacuum is the same in all reference systems.

### 1.3.1 Lorentz Transformation

Choose two reference systems $S$ and $S^{\prime}$ such that $S^{\prime}$ moves with respect to $S$ along the $x$ direction, with a velocity $v$. At the time $t=0$ the two systems coincide and in this moment the two clocks, measuring the time in $S$ and $S^{\prime}$, respectively, are set to zero.


Classically, the relation between the coordinates is thus:

$$
x^{\prime}=x-v t \quad y^{\prime}=y \quad z^{\prime}=z
$$

For $x^{\prime}=0$ we have $x=v t$. Relativistically, the transformation is given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{\prime}=\gamma(x-v t) \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the factor $\gamma=\gamma(v)$, the so called Lorez factor, has to be determined. In the same way we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
x=\gamma^{\prime}\left(x^{\prime}+v t^{\prime}\right) \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\gamma^{\prime}=\gamma(-v)$ since $S$ is moving with respect to $S^{\prime}$ with the velocity $-v$. But from symmetry resons $\gamma(-v)=\gamma(v)$, since reversing the direction of the coordinates $\left(x \rightarrow-x\right.$ and $\left.x^{\prime} \rightarrow-x^{\prime}\right)$ means that $v$ changes sign but does not affect $\gamma$.

The value of $\gamma=\gamma^{\prime}$ is now given by the fact that the speed of light has the same value $c$ in both systems. Consider a light flash that is emitted at $t=0$ in the $x$-direction from the common origin $O=O^{\prime}$. In the system $S$ the light has after some time $t$ reached the point $c t$, whereas, for the same event, in system $S^{\prime}$ one would measure a time $t^{\prime}$ and the corresponding distance $c t^{\prime}$ with respect to $O^{\prime}$. Insertion in (1.1) and (1.2) gives:

$$
\begin{equation*}
c t^{\prime}=\gamma(c-v) t \quad \text { and } \quad c t=\gamma(c+v) t^{\prime} \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Multiply the two $\Rightarrow \quad c^{2} t t^{\prime}=\gamma^{2}(c+v)(c-v) t t^{\prime}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Rightarrow \gamma^{2}=\frac{c^{2}}{c^{2}-v^{2}}=\frac{1}{1-v^{2} / c^{2}} \\
& \Rightarrow \quad \gamma=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

This can be generelized and shown to hold for two systems moving in all three coordinates with respect to each other.
If we insert $x^{\prime}=\gamma(x-v t)$ in (1.2) we get:

$$
\begin{array}{rll}
\Rightarrow \quad x & =\gamma^{\prime}\left[\gamma(x-v t)+v t^{\prime}\right] \\
\Rightarrow \quad x & =\gamma^{2} x-\gamma^{2} v t+\gamma v t^{\prime} \quad \text { since } \quad \gamma=\gamma^{\prime} \\
\Rightarrow \quad \gamma v t^{\prime} & =\gamma^{2} v t+x\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \\
\Rightarrow \quad t^{\prime} & =\gamma t+\frac{x\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right)}{\gamma v} \\
\Rightarrow \quad t^{\prime} & =\gamma\left[t+\frac{x}{v}\left(\frac{1-\gamma^{2}}{\gamma^{2}}\right)\right] \\
& =\gamma\left[t+\frac{x}{v}\left(1 / \gamma^{2}-1\right)\right] \\
\text { But: } \quad \gamma \quad & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}} \\
\Rightarrow \quad \gamma^{2} & =\frac{1}{1-v^{2} / c^{2}} \\
\Rightarrow \quad 1 / \gamma^{2} & =1-v^{2} / c^{2}
\end{array}
$$

If inserted this gives:

$$
\begin{aligned}
t^{\prime} & =\gamma\left[t+\frac{x}{v}\left(1-\frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}-1\right)\right] \\
\Rightarrow \quad t^{\prime} & =\gamma\left(t-\frac{v}{c^{2}} x\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

In the same way, $t=\gamma\left(t^{\prime}+\frac{v}{c^{2}} x^{\prime}\right)$
Summary for the Lorentz transformations:

$$
\begin{array}{|l|l|}
\hline \bar{x}_{\perp}^{\prime}=\bar{x}_{\perp} & \bar{x}_{\perp}=\bar{x}_{\perp}^{\prime} \\
\bar{x}_{\|}^{\prime}=\gamma(\bar{x}-v t) & \bar{x}_{\|}=\gamma\left(\bar{x}^{\prime}+v t^{\prime}\right) \\
t^{\prime}=\gamma\left(t-v / c^{2} \cdot \bar{x}\right) & t=\gamma\left(t^{\prime}+v / c^{2} \cdot \bar{x}^{\prime}\right) \\
\gamma=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}} & \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

where $\perp$ and $\|$ are the transverse and longitudinal components with respect to the velocity $v$.

### 1.3.2 Velocity Addition

Consider a particle moving along the $x$-axis with speed $u^{\prime}$ in the system $S^{\prime}$. What is the speed $u$ in the system $S$ ?

If the system $S^{\prime}$ moves with a velocity $v$ with respect to the system $S$, the particle will travel a distance: $\quad \Delta x=\gamma\left(\Delta x^{\prime}+v \Delta t^{\prime}\right)$
in the time interval : $\quad \Delta t=\gamma\left(\Delta t^{\prime}+\frac{v}{c^{2}} \Delta x^{\prime}\right)$
as measured in the system $S$.
$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t}=\frac{\Delta x^{\prime}+v \Delta t^{\prime}}{\Delta t^{\prime}+\left(v / c^{2}\right) \Delta x^{\prime}}=\frac{\left(\Delta x^{\prime} / \Delta t^{\prime}\right)+v}{1+\left(v / c^{2}\right)\left(\Delta x^{\prime} / \Delta t^{\prime}\right)}$
but $\quad \Delta x / \Delta t=u$ and $\Delta x^{\prime} / \Delta t^{\prime}=u^{\prime}$
$\Rightarrow u=\frac{u^{\prime}+v}{1+\left(u^{\prime} v / c^{2}\right)}$
If $u^{\prime}$ or $v$ are small, $\frac{u^{\prime} v}{c^{2}} \rightarrow 0$ and we get $u=u^{\prime}+v$, which is the classical solution. If $u \rightarrow c$ then $u^{\prime} \rightarrow c$ since $c$ is equal in all systems.

### 1.3.3 Momentum and Mass

Assume that a particle moves with a velocity $\bar{v}$ in the system $S$. The momentum is then defined as:

$$
\bar{p}=m(v) \bar{v}
$$

with $m(0)$ (or $m_{o}$ ) equal to the rest mass of a free particle and $m(v)$ (or $m_{v}$ ) corresponding to the relativistic mass.
Consider two particles $A$ and $B$ with the same rest mass $m_{o}$, which move towards each other with the velocities $\bar{v}_{o}$ and $-\bar{v}_{o}$, and collide inelastically such that they would stick together after the collision. This means that the pair will be at rest in its common reference system $S_{o}$. Conservation of momentum then means that the total momentum before the collisions also must be zero.


We now introduce two coordinate systems $S$ and $S^{\prime}$, which move along the $x_{o}$-axis relative to each other with a velocity $w$, such that particle $B$ before the collision travels along the $y$-axis (in system $S$ ) and particle $A$ along the $y^{\prime}$-axis (in system $S^{\prime}$ ). If particle $B$ has a velocity $u$ in the $y$-direction (measured in $S$ ), then particle $A$ must have a velocity $-u$ in the $y^{\prime}$-direction (measured in $S^{\prime}$ ).

Let us investigate the collisions in the reference system $S$. Since the composite system is at rest in $S_{o}$ it consequently must move in the system $S$ along the $x$-direction. Its momentum in the $y$-direction is zero and thus the total momentum before the collisions must also be zero, as the velocities of $A$ and $B$ were:
$\bar{v}_{A}=\bar{v}=\left(v_{x}^{\prime}, v_{y}^{\prime}\right)=\left(w,-u \sqrt{1-w^{2} / c^{2}}\right) \quad$ and $\quad \bar{v}_{B}=\bar{u}=\left(v_{x}, v_{y}\right)=(0, u)$
The expression for $v_{y}$ comes from the fact that $d x^{\prime}=0$ as $A$ moves along the $y$-axis and thus the Loretz transformation of the time can be written:
$d t=\gamma(w)\left(d t^{\prime}+w / c^{2} d x^{\prime}\right)=\frac{d t^{\prime}}{\sqrt{1-w^{2} / c^{2}}} \quad$ since $\quad d x^{\prime}=0$.
$\Rightarrow v_{y}=d y^{\prime} / d t=\frac{d y^{\prime}}{d t^{\prime}} \frac{d t^{\prime}}{d t}=-u \sqrt{1-w^{2} / c^{2}} \quad$ since $\quad \frac{d y^{\prime}}{d t^{\prime}}=-u \quad$ and $\quad \frac{d t^{\prime}}{d t}=\sqrt{1-w^{2} / c^{2}}$
For the total momentum to be zero we have:
$m_{u} \cdot u+m_{v} \cdot v_{y}=m_{u} \cdot u-m_{v} \cdot u \sqrt{1-w^{2} / c^{2}}=0$
or $\quad m_{u}=m_{v} \sqrt{1-w^{2} / c^{2}}$
where $\quad v^{2}=v_{x}^{2}+v_{y}^{2}=w^{2}+u^{2}\left(1-w^{2} / c^{2}\right)$
In the limit $u \rightarrow 0$ we have $v \rightarrow w$. Thus, $m_{v} \rightarrow m_{w}$ and $m(u) \rightarrow m(0)$.
$\Rightarrow m_{o}=m_{w} \sqrt{1-w^{2} / c^{2}}$
i.e

$$
m_{w}=\frac{m_{o}}{\sqrt{1-w^{2} / c^{2}}}
$$

For a particle with the rest mass $m_{o}$, moving at a speed $\bar{v}$, the momentum $\bar{p}$ is defined as:

$$
\bar{p}=m_{v} \cdot \bar{v}=\frac{m_{o} \bar{v}}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}=\frac{m_{o} \bar{v}}{\sqrt{1-\beta^{2}}} \quad \text { where } \quad \beta=\bar{v} / c
$$

The relativistic mass, $m_{v}=m(v)$, thus grows with the velocity as:
$m_{v}=\frac{m_{o}}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}=\gamma(v) \cdot m_{o}$

### 1.3.4 Energy

Starting from the force equation: $\quad \bar{F}=m \cdot a=m \frac{d v}{d t}=\frac{d \bar{p}}{d t}=\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{m_{o} \bar{v}}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}\right)$
one can obtain work and kinetic energy just as in classical mechanics.
Multiply by $\bar{v}$ : $\quad \bar{F} \cdot \bar{v}=\bar{F} \cdot \Delta \bar{x} / \Delta t=\frac{d \overline{\bar{p}}}{d t} \cdot \bar{v}=d / d t\left(1 / 2 m \bar{v}^{2}\right)=d T / d t$
However, work is $F \Delta \bar{x}$, and kinetic energy is $\frac{1}{2} m v^{2}$, and since $\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{2} m v^{2}\right)=\frac{1}{2} m \cdot 2 v \frac{d v}{d t}=$ $\frac{d(m v)}{d t} \cdot v=\frac{d p}{d t} \cdot v$, we have that the work per time unit is equal to the time derivative of the kinetic energy.

The relativistic expression for the change in kinetic energy, $d T$, is then given by:
$d T=\bar{v} \cdot d \bar{p}=d(\bar{v} \cdot \bar{p})-\bar{p} \cdot d \bar{v}=d\left(\frac{m_{o} v^{2}}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}\right)-\frac{m_{o} v \cdot d v}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}$
where $\quad-\frac{m_{o} v \cdot d v}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}=m_{o} c^{2} \cdot d\left(\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}\right)=d\left(\frac{m_{o} c^{2}\left(1-v^{2} / c^{2}\right)}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}\right)=d\left(\frac{m_{o}\left(c^{2}-v^{2}\right)}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}\right)$
since $\quad \Rightarrow \quad m_{o} c^{2} d\left(\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}\right)=m_{o} c^{2} \cdot 2\left(-\frac{v \cdot d v}{c^{2}}\right) \frac{1}{2}\left(1-v^{2} / c^{2}\right)^{-1 / 2}=-\frac{m_{o} v \cdot d v}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}$
$\Rightarrow d T=d\left(\frac{m_{o} \cdot v^{2}}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}\right)+d\left(\frac{m_{o}\left(c^{2}-v^{2}\right)}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}\right)=d\left(\frac{m_{o} c^{2}}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}\right)$
However, we have $T=0$ for $v=0$ which gives:
$T=\frac{m_{o} c^{2}}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}-m_{o} c^{2}=m_{v} c^{2}-m_{o} c^{2}$
Since the kinetic energy only depends on $v$ it should approach the non-relativistic expression for small $v$, which can be checked by an expansion:
$\gamma(v)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}=1+\frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{v^{2}}{c^{2}}+\ldots$
$\Rightarrow T=m_{o} c^{2}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}-1\right)=m_{o} c^{2}(\gamma-1)=\frac{1}{2} m_{o} v^{2}+\ldots$
The rest energy, $E_{o}$, is related to the rest mass through:

$$
E_{o}=m_{o} c^{2}
$$

and the relativistic energy is:

$$
E=E_{o}+T=m_{o} c^{2}+m_{v} c^{2}-m_{o} c^{2}=m_{v} c^{2} .
$$

Thus, energy and mass are related. The equivalence between energy and mass means that if the rest mass could be made disappear it should be converted to energy of some kind. A normal piece of matter does not undergo such processes but in particle physics it may happen that for example an electron and its antiparticle, the positron, annihilate to emit a photon. Like all kinds of electromagnetic radiation it will travel with the speed of light and have zero rest mass.

The general expression for energy is:

$$
E=m_{v} c^{2}=\frac{m_{o} c^{2}}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}} \quad \text { which means that } v=c \text { only if } m_{o}=0
$$

The momentum relation: $\quad \bar{p}=m_{v} \bar{v}=\frac{E}{c^{2}} \bar{v} \quad$ (since $m_{v}=E / c^{2}$ )
must be valid for every kind of energy travelling at speed $\bar{v}$. Especially for an electromagnetic wave (or photon) at speed $v=c$ we get:
$p=\frac{E}{c} \quad$ or $\quad E=p c$
So, if a photon has zero mass and it travels with the speed of light, how can we then differ between a 2 eV photon and one at 3 eV ? The answer is given by the Plank's formula, $E=\hbar \nu$, which relates energy to frequency. A 2 eV photon is red whereas a 3 eV photon is blue.

Generally energy can also be expressed as a function of momentum:
$E^{2}=\frac{m_{c}^{2} c^{4}}{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}=m_{o}^{2} c^{2}\left(\frac{c^{2}-v^{2}+v^{2}}{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}\right)=m_{o}^{2} c^{2}\left(\frac{c^{2}-v^{2}}{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}+\frac{v^{2}}{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}\right)=m_{o}^{2} c^{2}\left(c^{2}+\frac{v^{2}}{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}\right)$
$\Rightarrow E^{2}=c^{2}\left(m_{o}^{2} c^{2}+p^{2}\right)=m_{o}^{2} c^{4}+p^{2} c^{2} \quad E=c \sqrt{m_{o}^{2} c^{2}+p}$
If we set $c=1$ we can write $\quad E^{2}-p^{2}=m_{o}^{2}$
For $p \ll m_{o} c$ we can expand:
$E=m_{o} c^{2}\left(1+\frac{p^{2}}{2 m_{o}^{2} c^{2}}-\ldots.\right)=m_{o} c^{2}+\frac{p^{2}}{2 m_{o}}-\ldots$
which is of the form $\quad E=E_{o}+T \quad$ with $\quad T=\frac{p^{2}}{2 m_{o}}$.
This illustrates the connection to the non-relativistic expression.

### 1.3.5 More Relations

Using $p=m_{v} v=m_{o} \gamma v$ we obtain:
$p^{2}=m_{o}^{2} \gamma^{2} v^{2} \Rightarrow \frac{p^{2}}{\gamma^{2}}=m_{o}^{2} v^{2}$
$\Rightarrow m_{o}^{2}=\frac{p^{2}}{v^{2}} \cdot \frac{1}{\gamma^{2}}=\frac{p^{2}}{v^{2}}\left(1-\beta^{2}\right)$
Using the relation: $m_{o}^{2} c^{4}=E^{2}-p^{2} c^{2}$
$\Rightarrow m_{o}^{2}=\frac{E^{2}-p^{2} c^{2}}{c^{4}} \quad$ but $\quad m_{o}^{2}=\frac{p^{2}}{v^{2}}\left(1-\beta^{2}\right)$
$\Rightarrow p^{2}\left(1-\beta^{2}\right)=E^{2} v^{2} / c^{4}-p^{2} v^{2} / c^{2}$
$\Rightarrow p^{2}\left(1-v^{2} / c^{2}\right)=E^{2} v^{2} / c^{4}-p^{2} v^{2} / c^{2}$
$\Rightarrow p^{2}=E^{2} v^{2} / c^{4}$
Multiply by $c^{2} \Rightarrow p^{2} c^{2}=E^{2} v^{2} / c^{2}$
$\Rightarrow \frac{p c}{E}=\frac{v}{c}=\beta$
$\gamma=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\beta^{2}}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-p^{2} c^{2} / E^{2}}}=\frac{E}{\sqrt{E^{2}-p^{2} c^{2}}}=\frac{E}{m_{o} c^{2}}$

### 1.3.6 Example of Time Dilation: The Muon Decay

$\mu^{-} \rightarrow e^{-}+\bar{\nu}_{e}+\nu_{\mu}$
In the muon rest frame: $\tau_{o} \sim 2.2 \mu s ; m_{\mu}=0.106 \mathrm{GeV}$
Imagine a muon beam where $E_{\mu}=100 \mathrm{GeV}$.
What is the mean lifetime in the laboratory system?
$\tau_{l a b}=\gamma\left(\tau_{o}-\frac{v}{c^{2}} x\right)$
but $\mathrm{x}=0$ and $\mathrm{v}=0$ in the muon rest frame $\Rightarrow \tau_{l a b}=\gamma \cdot \tau_{o}$
$\tau_{l a b} / \tau_{o}=\gamma=E / m_{o} c^{2}=100 \mathrm{GeV} / 0.106 \mathrm{GeV} \sim 1000$
$\Rightarrow \tau_{l a b}=2.2 \mathrm{~ms}$

### 1.3.7 Four Vectors

A Lorentz transformation gives the relation between an arbitrary event happening at a point in space and time in the two systems $S$ and $S^{\prime}$ moving at constant speed with respect to each other. The basic condition is that the speed of light in vacuum is the same in both systems. For a light flash that is emitted at origo in system $S, \bar{r}=(0,0,0)$, at the time $t=0$ and arrives at $\bar{r}=(x, y, z)$ at the time t , we have
$|\bar{r}|=c t \quad$ or $\quad c^{2} t^{2}-\bar{r}^{2}=0$
The same is true in system $S^{\prime}$ provided the conditions are chosen such that $\bar{r}^{\prime}=(0,0,0)$ at $t^{\prime}=0$. The values $\bar{r}^{\prime}=\left(x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}, z^{\prime}\right)$ at $t^{\prime}$ for the arrival point, then fulfills:
$c^{2} t^{\prime 2}-\bar{r}^{\prime 2}=0$
The condition of this linear transformation from $S$ to $S^{\prime}$ is that when the first expression disappears, the second must also do so and vise versa. This is only true if:
$c^{2} t^{2}-\bar{r}^{2}=c^{2} t^{\prime 2}-\bar{r}^{\prime 2}$
or equivalently $\quad c^{2} t^{2}-\left(x^{2}+y^{2}+z^{2}\right)=$ invariant
This is the general condition that has to be fulfilled in a Lorentz transformation. Thus, four independent coordinates are needed to characterize an event in a space point.

In the same way as we use three-vectors to define a transformation in three-dimensional space (Euclidean space), four-vectors are introduced to describe Lorentz transformations.
$a=\left(a_{o}, a_{1}, a_{2}, a_{3}\right)=\left(a_{o}, \bar{a}\right)$
where $\quad \bar{a}=\left(a_{1}, a_{2}, a_{3}\right) \quad$ is a vector in three dimensions.
For example space-time coordinates can be written:
$r=\left(r_{o}, \bar{r}\right)=(c t, \bar{r})$ where $r_{0}=c t$ is the time component and $\bar{r}=(x, y, z)$ is the space component.
One can also define a four vector in energy-momentum space: $\quad p=\left(p_{0}, \bar{p}\right)=(E, \bar{p})$
The value of the four vector is: $\quad a^{2}=a_{o}^{2}-\left(a_{1}^{2}+a_{2}^{2}+a_{3}^{2}\right)=\left(a_{o}^{2}-\bar{a}^{2}\right)$
$a^{2}$ is invariant or it transforms like a scalar in Lorentz space, which means: $\quad a^{2}=a \cdot a$
The scalar product of two 4-vectors $a$ and $b$ is:
$a \cdot b=a_{o} \cdot b_{o}-\left(a_{1} b_{1}+a_{2} b_{2}+a_{3} b_{3}\right)=a_{o} \cdot b_{o}-\bar{a} \cdot \bar{b}$
$\Rightarrow(a+b)^{2}=a^{2}+b^{2}+2 a \cdot b$
The motion of a particle in Lorentz space is represented by a space-time curve and a differential transformation of a 4-vector.
$d r=(c d t, d \bar{r})=(c d t, \bar{v} d t)$
The time derivative $\quad u=\frac{d r}{d t}=\left(c, \frac{d \bar{r}}{d t}\right)=(c, \bar{v}) \quad$ is also a 4-vector since $d r$ is one.
The 4-momentum of the particle is obtained by multiplying the velocitiy $u$ with the relativistic mass, $m_{u}$ :
$p=m_{u} \cdot u=m_{o} \cdot \gamma u=\left(p_{o}, \bar{p}\right)=\left(m_{o} \gamma c, m_{o} \gamma \bar{v}\right)=(E / c, \bar{p})$
where $m_{o}$ is again the rest mass of a free particle.
since $\quad c p_{o}=m_{o} \gamma c^{2}=\frac{m_{o} c^{2}}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}=E$
$p=(E / c, \bar{p})$ is the energy-momentum four-vector.
The square of the 4 -vector is invariant: $\quad p^{2}=E^{2} / c^{2}-\bar{p}^{2}=m_{o}^{2} c^{2}$
or in natural units $\quad p^{2}=E^{2}-\bar{p}^{2}=m_{o}^{2}$
which can easily be realized by going to the rest frame of the particle where $u=(c, 0,0,0)$ and $p=\left(m_{o} c, 0,0,0\right)$
The scalar product of the 4-momenta of two particles $p_{A}$ and $p_{B}$ is:
$p_{A} \cdot p_{B}=\frac{E_{A} \cdot E_{B}}{c^{2}}-\bar{p}_{A} \cdot \bar{p}_{B}=$ invariant

### 1.3.8 Invariant mass

In the previous section we have seen that the four momentum of a particle is equal to its rest mass. This means that the rest mass is given by the relativistic length of the four-vector and this length is preserved under Lorentz transformations. Therefore the rest mass is also called the invariant mass.
The invariant mass of a system of particles is given by:
$m^{2}=\left(\Sigma E_{i}\right)^{2}-\left(\Sigma \bar{p}_{i}\right)^{2}=\Sigma p_{i} \quad$ i.e. the sum of the four-vectors for all the particles in the system.
If we specifically look at a decay of a particle $A$ into two particles $B$ and $C$, then the invariant mass of particle $A$ can be calculated from the four vectors of particles $B$ and $C$ in the following way:
$m_{A}^{2}=\left(p_{B}+p_{C}\right)^{2}=p_{B}^{2}+p_{C}^{2}+2 p_{B} \cdot p_{C}==m_{B}^{2}+m_{C}^{2}+2\left(E_{B} E_{C}-\bar{p}_{B} \bar{p}_{C}\right)$

### 1.3.9 Reference systems

The centre-of-mass or $C M$ system is the system in which the momentum sum of all particles in the initial as well as in the final states is zero. This has to be true since momentum has to be conserved in any reaction between particles.

The laboratory frame is the system in which the detector is at rest. The laboratory system and the centre-of-mass system coincide if we have colliding particles and antiparticles with equal energies.

Example 1) Calculate the centre-of-mass energy, $\sqrt{s}$, for a muon-proton scattering process where $E_{\mu}=100 \mathrm{GeV}$, and the proton is at rest

$p_{\mu}=\left(E_{\mu}, \bar{p}_{\mu}\right)$
$E_{\mu}^{2}-\bar{p}_{\mu}^{2}=m_{\mu}^{2} \Rightarrow E_{\mu} \approx\left|\bar{p}_{\mu}\right|$ since $m_{\mu}=0.1 \mathrm{GeV} \ll E_{\mu}$
$p_{p}=\left(m_{p}, 0\right) \quad\left(E_{p}=m_{p}\right.$ since the proton is at rest. $)$

The centre-of-mass energy squared is:
$s=\left(p_{\mu}+p_{p}\right)^{2}=p_{\mu}^{2}+p_{p}^{2}+2 p_{\mu} p_{p}=$
$=m_{\mu}^{2}+m_{p}^{2}+2 p_{\mu} p_{p}=$
$=m_{\mu}^{2}+m_{p}^{2}+2\left(E_{\mu} E_{p}-\bar{p}_{\mu} \bar{p}_{p}\right) \approx$
$\approx m_{\mu}^{2}+m_{p}^{2}+2 E_{\mu} m_{p}$ since $E_{p}=m_{p}$ and $\left|\bar{p}_{p}\right|=0$
But $E_{\mu} \gg m_{\mu}$ and $m_{p}$
$\Rightarrow s \approx 2 E_{\mu} m_{p}$

$$
\Rightarrow s \approx 200 \mathrm{GeV}^{2} \Rightarrow \sqrt{s} \approx 14 \mathrm{GeV}
$$

Example 2) What energy is needed to get the same centre-of-mass energy if the muon and the proton are colliding?


As above:
$s=\left(p_{\mu}+p_{p}\right)^{2}=m_{\mu}^{2}+m_{p}^{2}+2\left(E_{\mu} E_{p}-\bar{p}_{\mu} \bar{p}_{p}\right)$
Assume that $m_{\mu}$ and $m_{p}$ are small $\Rightarrow E_{\mu} \approx\left|\bar{p}_{\mu}\right|$ and $E_{p} \approx\left|\bar{p}_{p}\right|$
and $\bar{p}_{\mu} \cdot \bar{p}_{p}=\left|\bar{p}_{\mu}\right|\left|\bar{p}_{p}\right| \cos \theta ; \quad$ where $\cos \theta=-1$ since the directions of motion for the muon and the proton are opposite.
$s \approx 2\left(E_{\mu} E_{p}-\bar{p}_{\mu} \bar{p}_{p}\right) \approx 4 E_{\mu} E_{p}$
$4 E_{\mu} E_{p}=200 \mathrm{GeV}^{2}$
$\Rightarrow E_{\mu} E_{p}=50 \mathrm{GeV}^{2}$
If $E_{\mu}=E_{p} \Rightarrow E=\sqrt{50} \approx 7 \mathrm{GeV}$
Compare to 1) where $E_{\mu}=100 \mathrm{GeV}$

Example 3) Calculate the center of mass energy for $e^{+} e^{-}$scattering if $E_{e^{-}}=E_{e^{+}}=100 \mathrm{GeV}$.
$\left|\bar{p}_{e^{-}}\right|=\left|-\bar{p}_{e^{+}}\right| \approx E_{e^{ \pm}}$
$s=\left(p_{e^{-}}+p_{e^{+}}\right)^{2}=p_{e^{-}}^{2}+p_{e^{+}}^{2}+2 p_{e^{-}} p_{e^{+}}=$
$2 m_{e}^{2}+2\left(E_{e^{-}} E_{e^{+}}-p_{e^{-}} p_{e^{+}}\right)=2 m_{e}^{2}+2\left(E_{e^{-}} E_{e^{+}}+E_{e^{-}} E_{e^{+}}\right) \approx 4 E_{e^{ \pm}}^{2}$
$s=4 \cdot 100^{2}=40000 \mathrm{GeV}^{2}$
$\sqrt{s}=200 \mathrm{GeV}$

## Chapter 2

## Quantum Mechanics

### 2.1 The Photoelectric Effect

An important step in the development of quantum mechanics happened when Einstein in 1905 gave his explanation to the photoelectric effect. In order to release an electron from the surface of a metal foil a minimum energy of the photon is needed ( $\geq$ the binding energy of the electron). The number of released electrons only depends on the intensity of the photons and not on their energy.

Intensity $\sim$ number of quanta
Light behaves like a wave motion in some applications but as particles in others (wave-particle duality).

Planck assumed that light can be emitted or absorbed by matter only in multiples of a minimum quantum, which is given by:
$E_{\gamma}=h \nu ; \quad$ Planck's formula
Wave length: $\lambda=h / p$

### 2.2 The Schrödinger Equation

The principle foundation of non-relativistic quantum theory is the Schrödinger equation. Just as the wave function is the proper representation of light, Schrödinger formulated a matter wave function as the accurate representation of the behaviour of a matter particle. Schrödinger's equation describes a particle by its wavefunction $(\psi)$ showing how the particle wavefunction evolves in space and time under certain circumstances. The consequence of this description
is that collisions between particles no longer have to be viewed as collisions between billiard balls but rather as an interference of wavefunctions. The Schrödinger equation can not really be derived but is rather an axiom of the theory.

In non-relativistic classical mechanics the kinetic energy of a free particle is:
$E=\frac{1}{2} m \bar{v}^{2}$
$\Rightarrow E=\frac{\bar{p}^{2}}{2 m} \quad$ (classical energy-momentum relation)
In quantum mechanics energy and momentum are replaced by the following operators:
$E \rightarrow i \hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t}$
$\bar{p} \rightarrow-i \hbar \bar{\nabla}$
where $\bar{\nabla}=\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\right)$.
$\Rightarrow$ Schrödinger equation:
$i \hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi(\bar{x}, t)=\frac{(-i \hbar \bar{\nabla})^{2}}{2 m} \Psi(\bar{x}, t)$
and for a bound state: $i \hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi(\bar{x}, t)=\frac{(-i \hbar \bar{\nabla})^{2}}{2 m} \Psi(\bar{x}, t)+V \Psi(\bar{x}, t)$
The Schödinger equation is first order in time and second order in space. This is unsatisfactory when dealing with high energy particles, where the description must be relativistically invariant, with space and time coordinates occuring to the same order.

This equation describes non relativistic bound states like:

- Bohr's atomic model
- The energy levels of atoms
- Bound states of heavy quarks

How do we know whether a bound state is relativistic or not? A rule of thumb is that if the binding energy is small compared to the rest energies of the constitutents, then the system is non-relativistic. For example the binding energy of hydrogen is 13.6 eV , whereas the rest energy of an electron is 511 eV , which consequently is a non-relativistic system. On the other hand the binding energies of quarks in a nucleon are of the order of a few hundred MeV , which is essentially the same as the effective rest energy of the light quarks ( $u, d, s$ ), but substantially less than those of the heavy quarks $(c, b, t)$.

### 2.3 The Double Slit Experiment (Interference Effects)

Problems in particle physics often concern interactions between particles, where we need to calculate the density flux of a beam of particles, $j$. Consider the case of the double slit experiment (a more intuitive description can be found in Appendix A), where each slit can be regarded as a source of particles.


The probability to find a particle anywhere is:
$|\Psi|^{2}=\left|\Psi_{1}+\Psi_{2}\right|^{2}=\left|\Psi_{1}\right|^{2}+\left|\Psi_{2}\right|^{2}+\Psi_{1} \Psi_{2}^{*}+\Psi_{1}^{*} \Psi_{2}$
where $|\Psi|^{2}=\Psi \Psi^{*}$ and $\Psi^{*}$ is the complex conjugate of $\Psi$.
$\Rightarrow$ The interference can be constructive or destructive depending on the sign of $\Psi_{1}^{*} \Psi_{2}$ etc.
Define the probability density as $\rho=|\Psi|^{2}$
where $|\Psi|^{2} d^{3} x$ is the probability to find a particle in the volume $d^{3} x$.
Let us now convince ourselves that $|\Psi|^{2}$ is a probability density. Then it should obey the continuity equation, which describes conservation of probability, i.e. the rate with which the number of particles decreases in a given volume is equivalent to the total flux of particles out of that volume.
$\Rightarrow-\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int_{V} \rho d V=\int_{S} \bar{j} \cdot \bar{n} d S=\int_{V} \nabla \cdot \bar{j} d V$
where $j$ is the particle density flux and $\bar{n}$ is a unit vector normal to the surface element $d S$ and $S$ is the surface enclosing the volume V . The last equality is the Gauss theorem. The probability density and the flux density are thus related through:
$\Rightarrow \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t}+\nabla \cdot \bar{j}=0 \quad$ (continuity equation)
Use the Schrödinger equation to determine the flux.
$i \hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi(\bar{x}, t)=\frac{(-i \hbar \nabla)^{2}}{2 m} \Psi(\bar{x}, t)$
$\Rightarrow \quad i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi+\frac{\nabla^{2}}{2 m} \Psi=0 ; \quad$ if $\hbar=1$
The complex conjugate equation: $-i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi^{*}+\frac{\nabla^{2}}{2 m} \Psi^{*}=0$

Multiply (I) with $\quad-i \Psi^{*} \Rightarrow\left(-i \Psi^{*}\right)\left(i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi\right)+\left(\frac{-i}{2 m} \Psi^{*}\right) \nabla^{2} \Psi=0$
Multiply (II) with $-i \Psi \Rightarrow(-i \Psi)\left(-i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi^{*}\right)+\left(\frac{-i}{2 m} \Psi\right) \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}=0$
Subtract (III) - (IV): $\Psi^{*} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi+\Psi \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi^{*}+\frac{-i}{2 m}\left(\Psi^{*} \nabla^{2} \Psi-\Psi \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}\right)=0$
$\Rightarrow \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\Psi^{*} \Psi\right)-\frac{i}{2 m}\left(\Psi^{*} \nabla^{2} \Psi-\Psi \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}\right)=0$
since $\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\Psi^{*} \Psi\right)=\Psi \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi^{*}+\Psi^{*} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi$

Compare to the continuity equation: $\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t}+\nabla \cdot \bar{j}=0$
$\bar{j}=\frac{i}{2 m}\left(\Psi^{*} \nabla \Psi-\Psi \nabla \Psi^{*}\right)$
since $\quad \nabla \cdot \bar{j}=\nabla\left(\Psi^{*} \nabla \Psi-\Psi \nabla \Psi^{*}\right)=$
$=\nabla \Psi^{*} \nabla \Psi+\Psi^{*} \nabla^{2} \Psi-\nabla \Psi \nabla \Psi^{*}-\Psi \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}=$
$=\Psi^{*} \nabla^{2} \Psi-\Psi \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}$
Thus we have $\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\Psi^{*} \Psi\right) \equiv \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} \quad$ and $\quad-\frac{i}{2 m}\left(\Psi^{*} \nabla^{2} \Psi-\Psi \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}\right) \equiv \nabla \cdot \bar{j}$

Example 1) $\Psi=N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}$ which describes a free particle of energy $E$ and momentum $p$.
$\rho=\Psi^{*} \Psi=N \cdot e^{-i(\overline{p x}-E t)} \cdot N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}=|N|^{2}$
$\nabla \cdot \bar{j}=-\frac{i}{2 m}\left(\Psi^{*} \nabla^{2} \Psi-\Psi \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}\right)$
Insert into (V) gives: $\bar{j}=-\frac{i}{2 m}\left(N \cdot e^{-i(\overline{p x}-E t)} \cdot i N \bar{p} e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}-N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)} \cdot(-i) N \bar{p} e^{-i(\overline{p x}-E t)}\right)$
$=-\frac{i}{2 m}\left(i|N|^{2} \bar{p}+i|N|^{2} \bar{p}\right)=\frac{2 \bar{p}|N|^{2}}{2 m}=\frac{\bar{p}}{m}|N|^{2}$

### 2.4 The Uncertainty Principle

The uncertainty principle comes from the fact that any observation (measurement) is an interaction with the observer and thus will cause a disturbance to the system. This will prevent a perfect measurement. According to quantum mechanics (the theory of particles) there is always some uncertainty in the specification of positions and velocities. The best we can do is to give a certain probability that any particle will have a position near some coordinate $x$. We can give a probability density $\rho_{1}(x)$, such that $\rho_{1}(x) \Delta x$ is the probability that the particle will be found between $x$ and $x+\Delta x$. This can be described by a distribution with a width $\Delta x$. In the same way we must specify the velocity of the particle by means of the probability density $\rho_{2}(v)$, with $\rho_{2}(v) \Delta v$ being the probability that the velocity will be in the range $v$ and $v+\Delta v$. The corresponding distribution has a width of $\Delta v$.

One of the fundamental results of quantum mechanics is that the two functions $\rho_{1}(x)$ and $\rho_{2}(v)$ can not be chosen independently and can not both be made arbitrarily narrow. Nature demands
that the product of the two widths would be at least as big as $\hbar / m$, where $m$ is the mass of the particle. This is the Heisenberg uncertainty principle:
$\Delta v \cdot \Delta x \geq \hbar / m$
$\Rightarrow \Delta p \cdot \Delta x \geq \hbar$
A similar limitation occurs if one tries to measure the energy of a quantum system at a certain time. An instantaneous measurement requires a high frequency probe, which according to Planck's relation means a high energy probe. This gives a large disturbance to the system such that the energy can not be determined accurately. Conversely a low energy probe, which allows for a precise determination of the energy, is of low frequency and therfore the time can not be specified very well.
$\Rightarrow \Delta E \cdot \Delta t \geq \hbar$
This can be illustrated by an attempt to localize the position of an electron orbiting around a nucleaus by scattering a photon off it. The wavelength $(\lambda)$ of the photon is related to its momentum ( $p$ ) through $\lambda=\frac{h}{p}$.


Since the wavelength is inversely proportional to the momentum one needs the highest possible momentum in order to determine the position as accurately as possible. However, in using a high momentum photon the electron will be greatly disturbed such that the knowledge of its momentum will be very uncertain.

On the other hand, an electron travelling through space without being disturbed has a definite momentum ( $\Delta p=0$ ), given by $p=\hbar / \lambda$. However, since it corresponds to a wave extending infinitely through space it is impossible to specify its location.

An electron bound to an atom is localised by the size of the atom $(\Delta x)$, which corresponds to an uncertainty in its momentum, $\Delta p$, given by the uncertainty principle. The spread in the wavelength of the wavefunction then becomes $\Delta \lambda=\frac{h}{\Delta p}$. This gives a localised wave packet reflecting the approximate localisation of the electron. In high energy collisions the electron is very accurately localised and it becomes sensible to regard the electron as a particle.


### 2.5 Spin

The measurement of atomic spectra around 1925 revealed structures with double lines where only a single line was expected according to Bohr's atomic model. The explanation proposed was that this effect is caused by the fact that the electron rotates around its own axis, a property called spin. According to Bohr the electron also orbits around the nucleus and thereby it gives rise to a magnetic field in the same way as a loop of electric current does. Equivalently the spin of the electron around its own axis can be regarded as a small loop of current, which creates a small magnetic field. The two magnetic fields can either be aligned or be opposite to each other, which corresponds to different directions of the electron spin. The energy of the two possible states differ slightly and give rise to a splitting of the spectral lines associated with the Bohr orbit.

The description of spin as a rotating ball is attractive since it gives us an intuitive feeling which helps understanding the phenoma observed. Although the point of the rotation axis will not move, all other points on the surface of the ball will rotate. Now, the electron is as far as we know a pointlike particle and therefore it is hard to define the rotation of en electron in a classical way. It must, however, be kept in mind that this is just a model and that spin in reality is a quantum concept, that can be used to specify the state of an electron, like the quanta of intrinsic angular momentum and electric charge.

Elementary particles appear in two types; fermions, which have half integer $\operatorname{spin}\left(\frac{1}{2} \hbar, \frac{3}{2} \hbar, \ldots\right)$ and obey Fermi-Dirac statistics, and bosons, with integer spin $(0,1 \hbar, 2 \hbar, \ldots)$, obeying Bose-Einstein statistics. The statistics, which the different particle types are said to obey determines how the wave function, $\psi$, describing a system of identical particles behaves under the interchange of any two particles. The probability $|\psi|^{2}$ will not be affected by the interchange since all particles are identical. The so called spin statistics theorem says:
under exchange of identical bosons $\psi$ is symmetric
under exchange of identical fermions $\psi$ is antisymmetric
What implications does this have? Assume that we have two fermions in the same quantum state. If we interchange these particles the wave function would obviously not change. But according to the rule of spin statistics the wave function of fermions must change under an exchange. Consequently it is not allowed for two fermions to exist in the same quantum state. This is called the Pauli exculsion principle.
On the other hand there are no such restrictions to bosons, where an arbitrary number can be in the same quantum state. Compare to photons in a laser.

### 2.6 Conservation Laws

Some basic conserved quantities are:

- energy: the energy of the initial state must be equal to that of the final state $\Rightarrow p \rightarrow n+e^{+}+\nu_{e}$ can not occur spontaneously since $m_{p}(938)<m_{n}(939)$
- momentum: the momentum of the initial state must be equal to that of the final state
- electric charge: the electric charge of the initial state must be equal to that of the final state

Beside these, there are also other quantities that has been found to be conserved.

### 2.6.1 Leptons and Lepton Number

The known leptons and some of their properties are listed below.

| Charged leptons |  |  |  | Neutrinos |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| name | symbol | electric <br> charge | mass <br> $\left(\mathrm{MeV} / \mathrm{c}^{2}\right)$ | name | symbol | electric <br> charge | mass <br> $\left(\mathrm{MeV} / \mathrm{c}^{2}\right)$ |
| Electron | $e^{-}$ | -1 | 0.511 | Electron neutrino | $\nu_{e}$ | 0 | $<0.000022$ |
| Positron | $e^{+}$ | +1 | 0.511 | Electron antineutrino | $\bar{\nu}_{e}$ | 0 |  |
| Muon | $\mu^{-}$ | -1 | 105.7 | Muon neutrino | $\nu_{\mu}$ | 0 | $<0.17$ |
|  | $\mu^{+}$ | +1 | 105.7 | Muon antineutrino | $\bar{\nu}_{\mu}$ | 0 |  |
| Tau lepton | $\tau^{-}$ | -1 | 1777 | Tau neutrino | $\nu_{\tau}$ | 0 | $<15.5$ |
|  | $\tau^{+}$ | +1 | 1777 | Tau antineutrino | $\bar{\nu}_{\tau}$ | 0 |  |

The electron neutrino was introduced by Pauli in 1930 to explain the missing energy in $\beta$ decays, $n \rightarrow p+e^{-}+\bar{\nu}_{e}$. The experimental evidence for the existence of the neutrino was given by Reines and Cowan more than 20 years later. They used the high flux of anti-neutrinos $\left(10^{13} s^{-1} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2}\right)$ from beta decays in a reactor to hit a tank of water in which photon detectors where positioned. Some of the anti-neutrinos will interact with the protons in the water and create a neutron and a positron. The positron will annihilate with an electron in the water and thereby two photons are emitted, which can be detected by the photon detectors. However, this was not an unambigous proof of the neutrino detection but also the emission of a neutron had to be verified. By mixing cadmium chloride into the water the neutron could be absorbed by the ${ }^{108} C d$ atom and produce an excited state of ${ }^{109} C d$ which subsequently decays by emitting a photon with a delay of $5 \mu \mathrm{~s}$.

$$
n+{ }^{108} C d \rightarrow{ }^{109} C d * \rightarrow{ }^{109} C d+\gamma
$$

This provided a distinctive signature for the neutrino reaction and thus the existence of the neutrino was experimentally proven.

Attempts have been made to determine the mass of the electron neutrino by measuring the energy spectrum of electrons emitted in $\beta$-decays, which must fulfill:

$$
m_{e} c^{2}<E_{e}<\left(m_{n}-m_{p}-m_{\nu_{e}}\right) c^{2}
$$

For example the decay of tritium, ${ }^{3} H \rightarrow{ }^{3} \mathrm{He}+e^{-}+\bar{\nu}_{e}\left(p n n \rightarrow p p n+e^{-}+\bar{\nu}_{e}\right)$, has been studied, but so far the results of the measurements have only provided upper limits on the mass. The presently best limit gives $m_{\nu_{e}}<2.2 \mathrm{eV}$ (Mainz 2005).

Although it has not so far been possible to measure the masses of the neutrino particles we know that they must have a small mass since so called neutrino oscillations have been observed. If the neutrino particles have masses it is possible for them to undergo flavour oscillations, which means that although they are created as a certain flavour eigenstate they might oscillate into a different flavour eigenstate after some time. The explanation is that the neutrino is created as a flavour eigenstate but propagate through space as a superposition of mass eigenstates. Thus, the flavour eigenstates $\nu_{e}, \nu_{\mu}$ and $\nu_{\tau}$ are expressed as combinations of the mass eigenstates $\nu_{1}$, $\nu_{2}$ and $\nu_{3}$, which propagate with slightly different frequencies due to their different masses. This leads to a phase shift that depends on the distance the neutrino has travelled such that at some distance the combination of mass eigenstates will no longer correspond to a pure neutrino flavour.

If we for simplicity consider a two neutrino flavour system, $\nu_{e}$ and $\nu_{\mu}$, they would be connected to the mass eigenstates through the mixing matrix:

$$
\binom{v_{\mu}}{v_{\mathrm{e}}}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\cos \theta & \sin \theta \\
-\sin \theta & \cos \theta
\end{array}\right)\binom{v_{1}}{v_{2}}
$$

such that:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\nu_{\mu}=\nu_{1} \cos \theta+\nu_{2} \sin \theta \\
\nu_{e}=-\nu_{1} \sin \theta+\nu_{2} \cos \theta
\end{gathered}
$$

where $\theta$ is the mixing angle. This is equivalent to the relation between coordinates in two rotated coordinate systems as illustrated in the figure below:


Conversely, the mass eigenstates can be expressed as a combination of the flavour eigenstates, $\nu_{e}$ and $\nu_{\mu}$.

Let us assume that we start out with a beam of muon neutrinos, with the flavour eigenstate represented by a plane wave function. However, the flavour eigenstate is a combination of two mass eigenstates, $\nu_{1}$ and $\nu_{2}$, also represented by plane wave functions. At $t=0$ the wave functions of the mass eigenstates will add up to the full wave function for the pure flavour $\nu_{\mu}$ ( $100 \%$ probability to have $\nu_{\mu}$ ), since they are in the same phase. On the other hand at $t=0$, the mass eigenstates will cancel for the flavour $\nu_{e}\left(0 \%\right.$ probability to have $\left.\nu_{e}\right)$, since they for this flavour eigenstate are in opposite phase. Due to the fact that the mass eigenstates travel at different frequencies, such that the heavier one, $\nu_{1}$, is slower than the lighter one, $\nu_{2}$, we will after some distance no longer have a pure flavour eigenstate but a little less of $\nu_{\mu}$ and a non-zero contribution of $\nu_{e}$. It means that the probability to identify the flavour state as a $\nu_{\mu}$ is less than $100 \%$ and to identfy the flavour state as a $\nu_{e}$ becomes bigger than $0 \%$. At an even longer distance the mass eigenstate $\nu_{1}$ has lagged behind so much with respect to $\nu_{2}$ that $\nu_{1}$ and $\nu_{2}$ are completely out of phase for the flavour eigenstate $\nu_{\mu}$ and thus will cancel. However, for the flavour eigenstate $\nu_{e}$ the mass eigenstates are in phase and will add up to the full wave function representing this flavour eigenstate. At this point the muon neutrino has oscillated into an electron neutrino. The propagation with time of the probability for the flavour eigenstates $\nu_{\mu}$ and $\nu_{e}$ are illustrated in the figure below.


The only way to determine the flavour of a neutrino is through its interaction, where $\nu_{e}$ always goes together with an electron and $\nu_{\mu}$ goes together with a muon. Thus, through the charged leptons appearing in the reaction the flavour of the neutrino is known.

In the 1970's it was experimelntally found that the number of $\nu_{e}$ emitted from the sun was only about one third of what was expected. A possible explanation would come from the existence of neutrino oscillations. The experimental evidence for such oscillations was given by underground neutrino experiments which observed the neutrino flux from cosmic particles. Cosmic particles interact with the atmosphere and produce secondary particles (mostly pions and kaons) of which some may decay weakly and give rise to mainly muon neutrinos. These neutrinos normally penetrate the earth, whereas all other particles are absorbed. However, due to the small but finite probability for weak interactions, a few of the neutrinos will occasionally interact with the underground detector. If the detector contains water the neutrino will interact with the nucleons according to:
$\nu_{e}\left(\nu_{\mu}\right)+n \rightarrow e^{-}\left(\mu^{-}\right)+p$
The leptons will travel with a speed higher that the speed of light in the water and thereby emit so called Cherenkov radiation, which can be detected by photosensitive detectors in the water. From measuring the Cherenkov radiation the electrons and muons can be distinguished.
From the observation of neutrino oscillations it is clear that the neutrinos must have a small mass. However, so far the experimental technique has not been accurate enough to measure the masses.

Lepton number conservation means that the number of leptons minus the number of antileptons must be the same in the initial and final state.
Consider the decay:
$\mu^{-} \rightarrow e^{-}+\gamma$
this reaction is allowed by energy, momentum and charge conservation and appears to fulfill lepton number conservation but it could not be observed experimentally. The solution to this problem was to assume that there were separate lepton number conservation rules for electrons and muons. A consequence of this is that there must exist one neutrino belonging to the electron $\left(\nu_{e}\right)$ and one belonging to the muon $\left(\nu_{\mu}\right)$. However, due to the possible neutrino oscillations, lepton number conservation might be broken in some cases, but this effect is so small that it will be disregarded in the following.

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_{e} & =1 \text { for } e^{-} \text {and } \nu_{e} \\
& =-1 \text { for } e^{+} \text {and } \bar{\nu}_{e} \\
& =0 \text { for all other particles }
\end{aligned}
$$

$L_{\mu}=1$ for $\mu^{-}$and $\nu_{\mu}$
$=-1$ for $\mu^{+}$and $\bar{\nu}_{\mu}$
$=0$ for all other particles
and in the same way the $\tau$-lepton must have its own neutrino.
$L_{\tau}=1$ for $\tau^{-}$and $\nu_{\tau}$
$=-1$ for $\tau^{+}$and $\bar{\nu}_{\tau}$
$=0$ for all other particles

$$
\begin{array}{cccccc} 
& \mu^{-} & \rightarrow & e^{-} & + & \gamma \\
L_{\mu} & 1 & & 0 & & 0 \\
L_{e} & 0 & & 1 & & 0
\end{array}
$$

Thus lepton number conservation is broken twice in this reaction.

Another example:


## Baryons and Baryon Number

Baryons are particles, which contain three quarks, $(q q q)$, whereas the antibaryons contain three antiquarks, $(\bar{q} \bar{q} \bar{q})$. Examples of baryons are the proton and the neutron.
$\mathrm{B}=1$ for baryons and -1 for antibaryons
$\Rightarrow B=1 / 3$ for quarks and $-1 / 3$ for antiquarks

Example: investigate the decay of a proton into a neutral $\pi$-meson (pion), $\pi^{o}$, and a positron. The mesons are particles which consist of a bound quark and an antiquark, $(q \bar{q})$.

this reaction is not allowed by baryon and lepton number conservation.

### 2.6.2 Parity

Parity is a property which is related to the symmetry of the wave function representing a system of fundamental particles. A parity transformation replaces such a system with a type of mirror image, i.e. the spatial coordinates describing the system are inverted through the point at the origin. If a system remains identical after such a transformation, the parity is said to be even, whereas if the formulation after the transformation is the negative of the original, the parity is odd. For physical observables which depend on the square of the wave function, the parity is unchanged. A complex system has an overall parity that is the product of the parities of its components.

Up to 1956 it was assumed that the mirror image of any physics process would also be a possible physics process. This was called parity conservation, which means even parity. Although this is always true for strong and electromagnetic interactions, it is not always the case for weak interactions (see Chapter 3). This was found by studying the $\beta$-decay ( $n \rightarrow p+e^{-}+\bar{\nu}_{e}$ ) of ${ }^{60} C o$. If the ${ }^{60} \mathrm{Co}$ atoms were cooled down to 0.01 K the spin of the atoms could be aligned by applying a strong a magnetic field and it was found that the electrons were emitted predominantly in the direction opposite to the spin.


A simple illustration of this process is shown in the picture below, where the emitted electron is represented by a momentum vector, which is defined through a direction and a magnitude. The spin is a measure of the angular momentum of the nucleus and is defined as a vector product, $L=r \times p$. This is called an axial vector or a pseudovector.


We now reconstruct the 'mirror system' by performing a reflection through the origin of a coordinate system (equivalent to changing signs of all the coordinate axes), which we can choose such that it has its z -axis is parallel to the spin direction. It is clear that a vector will change direction when it is reflected in the origin so that the electrons will be emitted in the opposite direction in the 'mirror system' compared to the original system. Since the direction of the spin is given by the vector product $x^{\prime} \times y^{\prime}$ in the original system and $\left(-x^{\prime}\right) \times\left(-y^{\prime}\right)$ in the 'mirror system', we notice that the direction of the spin will remain the same in both systems. This means that an equal number of electrons should be emitted parallel and antiparallel to the spin if parity is conserved. This is in contradiction with the observation. Thus, we have parity violation i.e. parity is odd.

Every particle can be assigned an intrinsic parity and the total parity is the product of the intrinsic parities of the particles and the extrinsic parity $(-1)^{L}$ of the system, where L is the orbital momentum. By convention spin $1 / 2$ fermions (quarks and charged leptons) have been given an intrinsic parity of +1 whereas the correspond antiparticles have been assigned an intrinsic parity of -1 . It doesn't make much sense to assign the neutrino particles an intrinsic parity since the neutrinos can only interact weakly and as we have seen parity can be broken in weak interactions. Nucleons are defined to have intrinsic parity +1 , given by $P_{q} P_{q} P_{q}=+1$. The parity of a meson, consisting of a quark and an antiquark, can be written:
$P=P_{q} P_{\bar{q}}(-1)^{L} \quad \Rightarrow \quad P=-(-1)^{L}=(-1)^{L+1}$
Mesons whith zero spin will in their lowest energy state have orbital momentum zero and thus get parity $(-1)^{0+1}=-1$, i.e. they have negative parity. This is normally denoted $J^{P}=0^{-}$, where $J$ is the total orbital momentum and '-' gives the parity. The definition of the total orbital momentum is $J=L+S$, with $L$ and $S$ being integer numbers such that $|L-S| \leq J \leq L+S$. We can identify mesons with different parities:

|  | $L$ | $S$ | $J^{P}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Pseudoscalar meson | 0 | 0 | $0^{-}$ |
| Scalar meson | 1 | 1 | $0^{+}$ |
| Vector meson | 0 | 1 | $1^{-}$ |
| Axial vector meson | 1 | 0 | $1^{+}$ |

### 2.6.3 Helicity

The helicity (or handedness) of a relativistic particle defines whether the spin is oriented parallel or antiparallel with respect to the direction of motion (the momentum vector). If the spin is parallel to the momentum vector the rotation of the particle corresponds to that of a right-handed screw, whereas if the spin is antiparallel to the momentum vector its rotation corresponds to a left-handed screw. Thus, the particles are said to be right-handed or left-handed.

For massless particles the helicity is a well defined quantity since the particles travel with the speed of light. However, for massive particles the helicity can change depending on the velocity of our reference system compared to the velocity of the particle which is observed. The helicity of a particle observed from a system which moves in the same direction as the particle but with a velocity which is smaller than that of the particle is opposite to that observed from a system which moves faster than the particle. Thus, massive particles can be either right-handed or left-handed. Antiparticles have the opposite helcity compared to particles.


From studies of $\beta$-decays it was found that the emitted electrons were predominantly lefthanded if they were relativistic i.e. their velocity was close to that of light. This indicates that massless particles should be left-handed. This was also confirmed by measurements of the helicity of neutrino particles, which we know are almost massless. Thus, antineutrinos are right-handed.

### 2.7 The Klein-Gordon Equation

In non-relativistc quantum mechanics, particles are described by the Schrödinger equation, but since it violates Lorentz invariance it can not be used for particles moving relativistically. In
relativistic quantum mechanics, particles of spin 0 are described by the Klein-Gordon equation and particles with spin $1 / 2$ by the Dirac equation.

Start from the relativistic energy-momentum conservation and replace energy and momentum with the same operators as introduced for the Schrödinger equation:
$E^{2}=\bar{p}^{2}+m^{2}$
$E \rightarrow i \hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t}$
$\Rightarrow E^{2} \rightarrow i^{2} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}}=-\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} ; \quad \hbar=1$
$\bar{p} \rightarrow-i \hbar \nabla$
$\Rightarrow \bar{p}^{2} \rightarrow i^{2} \nabla^{2}=-\nabla^{2} ; \quad \hbar=1$
Inserting this gives the Klein-Gordon equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi(x, t)=-\nabla^{2} \Psi(x, t)+m^{2} \Psi(x, t) \tag{I}
\end{equation*}
$$

The plane wave solutions to the Klein-Gordon equation, describing a free particle, are:
$\Psi(\bar{x}, t)=N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}$
$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi=-i E N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}$
$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi=\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi\right)=$
$=\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(-i E N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}\right)=$
$=i^{2} E^{2} N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}=-E^{2} N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}=$
$=-E^{2} \cdot \Psi$
$\nabla \Psi=i \bar{p} N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}$
$\nabla^{2} \Psi=\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \Psi\right)=$
$=\nabla\left(i \bar{p} N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}\right)=$
$=-\bar{p}^{2} N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}=-p^{2} \cdot \Psi$
Insert into (I) $\Rightarrow-\left(-E^{2} \Psi\right)=-\left(-\bar{p}^{2} \Psi\right)+m^{2} \Psi$
$\Rightarrow E^{2}=\bar{p}^{2}+m^{2}$
$\Rightarrow E= \pm \sqrt{\bar{p}^{2}+m^{2}}$
$\Rightarrow$ gives positive and negative energies as a direct consequence of momentum conservation
$\Rightarrow \Psi_{+}=N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)} \rightarrow i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi_{+}=i(-i E) \Psi_{+}=E \Psi_{+} \rightarrow$ positive energies
$\Psi_{-}=N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}+E t)} \rightarrow i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi_{-}=i(i E) \Psi_{-}=-E \Psi_{-} \rightarrow$ negative energies

### 2.7.1 The Continuity Equation

We have the Klein-Gordon equation:
$-\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi+\nabla^{2} \Psi=m^{2} \Psi$
Multiply by $-i \Psi^{*}$
$-\left(-i \Psi^{*}\right) \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi+\left(-i \Psi^{*}\right) \nabla^{2} \Psi=m^{2}\left(-i \Psi^{*}\right) \Psi$
Multiply the complex conjugate equation with $-i \Psi$
$-(-i \Psi) \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi^{*}+(-i \Psi) \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}=m^{2}(-i \Psi) \Psi^{*}$
Subtract (II) from (III)
$i\left(\Psi^{*} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi-\Psi \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi^{*}\right)-i\left(\Psi^{*} \nabla^{2} \Psi-\Psi \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}\right)=-i m^{2}\left(\Psi^{*} \Psi-\Psi \Psi^{*}\right)$
Study: $\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\Psi^{*} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi-\Psi \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi^{*}\right)=$
$=\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi^{*} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi+\Psi^{*} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi-\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi^{*}-\Psi \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi^{*}$
$=\Psi^{*} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t} \Psi-\Psi \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi^{*}=1$ st term in equation above
Study: $\quad \nabla\left(\Psi^{*} \nabla \Psi-\Psi \nabla \Psi^{*}\right)=$
$=\nabla \Psi^{*} \nabla \Psi+\Psi^{*} \nabla^{2} \Psi-\nabla \Psi \nabla \Psi^{*}-\Psi \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}=\Psi^{*} \nabla^{2} \Psi-\Psi \nabla^{2} \Psi^{*}=2$ nd term in the equation above $\quad\left(\nabla \Psi^{*} \nabla \Psi-\nabla \Psi \nabla \Psi^{*}=0\right)$
$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left[i\left(\Psi^{*} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi-\Psi \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi^{*}\right)\right]+\nabla\left[-i\left(\Psi^{*} \nabla \Psi-\Psi \nabla \Psi^{*}\right)\right]=0$
Compare to the continuity equation: $\quad \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \rho+\nabla \bar{j}=0$.
Calculate the probability density, $\rho$, and the density flux, $j$ for a free particle described by $\Psi=N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}$.
$\Psi=N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)} \Rightarrow \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t}=(-i E) \cdot \Psi \quad$ and $\quad \nabla \Psi=(i p) \cdot \Psi$
$\Psi^{*}=N \cdot e^{-i(\overline{p x}-E t)} \Rightarrow \frac{\partial \Psi^{*}}{\partial t}=(i E) \cdot \Psi^{*}$ and $\nabla \Psi^{*}=-(i p) \cdot \Psi^{*}$
From above we obtain $j$ and $\rho$ :
$\bar{j}=-i\left(N \cdot e^{-i(\overline{p x}-E t)} \cdot(i p) N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}-N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)} \cdot(-i p) N \cdot e^{-i(\overline{p x}-E t)}\right)=$
$=-i\left(i \bar{p} N^{2}-(-i \bar{p}) N^{2}\right)=-i\left(i \bar{p} N^{2}+i \bar{p} N^{2}\right)=2 \bar{p} N^{2}$
$\rho=i\left(N \cdot e^{-i(\overline{p x}-E t)} \cdot(-i E) N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}-N \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}(i E) N \cdot e^{-i(\overline{p x}-E t)}\right)=$
$=i\left(-i E N^{2}-i E N^{2}\right)=2 E N^{2}$
For $E<0$ we get $\rho<0$ i.e. a probability $<0$, which is unphysical. Hence, we need a new interpretation of $\rho$.

### 2.8 Antiparticles: The Hole Theory and Feynmans Interpretation

The fact that the Klein-Gordan equation, for each quantum state of positive energy, $E$, also predicts a corresponding state with negative energy, $-E$, indeed created a problem. Dirac's solution to this was to define 'vacuum' as a state were all negative energy states are occupied, but none of the positive energy states. Thus vacuum in this picture is an infinite sea of particles with negative energy, $E<0$. If we now introduce a particle into vacuum it can obviously not enter any of the negative states, since these are all occupied, but it has to fill one of the positive energy states. Furthermore, if the particle loses energy by emitting photons it may drop to a lower lying positive energy state but not to a negative energy state. On the other hand, a particle in a negative energy state may be excited to a positive energy state leaving behind a hole in the sea, which can be interpreted as an antiparticle. The net effect of the excitation is pair production $e^{-}\left(E^{\prime}\right)+e^{+}(E)$ with the condition:
$E+E^{\prime} \geq 2 m_{e}$
in the case of electrons.


This picture works well for fermions since the Pauli exclusion principle forbids two particles to be in exactly the same quantum state. However, this restriction is not valid for bosons, for which arbitrarily many particles can be in the same state, and therefore a different interpretation is needed.
By introducing electric charge into the continuity equation, such that we instead of particle flow discuss charge flow, then $\rho$ would represent charge density instead of probability density and $j$ would represent charge density flux instead of probability density flux. This opens up for an interpretation, introduced by Richard Feynman, which means that the ( $E, \bar{p}$ ) solution is identical to the $(-E,-\bar{p})$ solution for a particle with opposite charge (antiparticle). In other words, a negative-energy particle solution going backwards in time is identical to a positive-energy antiparticle solution going forward in time. This interpretation is valid for both fermions and bosons. Such a representation is used in so called Feynman diagrams in order to illustrate scattering processes and they constitute a valuable tool to calculate the probability for the process to happen. A short introduction to Feynman diagrams will be given in chapter 3.


### 2.9 The Dirac Equation

To overcome the problems with $\rho<0$ and negative $E$-solutions Dirac formulated a wave equation linear in the $E$ and $p$ operators, which is first order in both derivatives.
$E \Psi=\overline{\alpha p} \Psi+\beta m \Psi$
$E \rightarrow i \hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t}$
$\bar{p} \rightarrow-i \hbar \nabla$

$$
\begin{equation*}
i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi=-i\left(\alpha_{1} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}} \Psi+\alpha_{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{2}} \Psi+\alpha_{3} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{3}} \Psi\right)+\beta m \Psi \quad \quad \hbar=1 \tag{I}
\end{equation*}
$$

The four coefficients $\alpha_{i}$ and $\beta$ are determined by the requirement that a free particle must satisfy the energy-momentum conservation $E^{2}=\bar{p}^{2}+m^{2}$.
Differentiate (I): $\quad i \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi=-i\left(\alpha_{1} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{1} \partial t} \Psi+\alpha_{2} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{2} \partial t} \Psi+\alpha_{3} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{3} \partial t} \Psi\right)+\beta m \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi$;
but $\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{1} \partial t} \Psi=\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi$
Multiply (I) by $-i \Rightarrow \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi=-\left(\alpha_{1} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}} \Psi+\alpha_{2} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{2} \partial t} \Psi+\alpha_{3} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{3} \partial t} \Psi\right)-i \beta m \Psi$
$\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi=-\left(\alpha_{1} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{1} \partial t} \Psi+\alpha_{2} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{2} \partial t} \Psi+\alpha_{3} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{3} \partial t} \Psi\right)-i \beta m \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi$
Study: $\quad \alpha_{1} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi=\alpha_{1} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}}\left[-\left(\alpha_{1} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}} \Psi+\alpha_{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{2}} \Psi+\alpha_{3} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{3}} \Psi\right)-i \beta m \Psi\right]=$ $=-\left(\alpha_{1}^{2} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{1}^{2}} \Psi+\alpha_{1} \alpha_{2} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{1} \partial x_{2}} \Psi+\alpha_{1} \alpha_{3} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{1} \partial x_{3}} \Psi\right)-i \alpha_{1} \beta m \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}} \Psi$
In the same way: $\quad \alpha_{2} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{2}} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi=-\left(\alpha_{2} \alpha_{1} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{1} \partial x_{2}} \Psi+\alpha_{2}^{2} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{2}^{2}} \Psi+\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{2} \partial x_{3}} \Psi\right)-i \alpha_{2} \beta m \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{2}} \Psi$ and: $\quad \alpha_{3} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{3}} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi=-\left(\alpha_{3} \alpha_{1} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{1} \partial x_{3}} \Psi+\alpha_{3} \alpha_{2} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{2} \partial x_{3}} \Psi+\alpha_{3}^{2} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{3}^{2}} \Psi\right)-i \alpha_{3} \beta m \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{3}} \Psi$
and: $\quad-i \beta m \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Psi=-i \beta m\left\{\left[-\left(\alpha_{1} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}} \Psi+\alpha_{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{2}} \Psi+\alpha_{3} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{3}} \Psi\right)\right]-i \beta m \Psi\right\}=$ $=i \beta m\left(\alpha_{1} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{1}} \Psi+\alpha_{2} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{2}} \Psi+\alpha_{3} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{3}} \Psi\right)-\beta^{2} m^{2} \Psi$
Insert in (IV) $\Rightarrow \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \Psi=\sum_{j=1}^{3} \alpha_{j}^{2} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{j}^{2}} \Psi+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq k}\left(\alpha_{j} \alpha_{k}+\alpha_{k} \alpha_{j}\right) \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{j} \partial x_{k}} \Psi+i \cdot m \sum_{j=1}^{3}\left(\alpha_{j} \beta+\right.$ $\left.\beta \alpha_{j}\right) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{j}} \Psi-\beta^{2} m^{2} \Psi$

For $\Psi \sim e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}$
$\Rightarrow \frac{d^{2}}{d t^{2}} \Psi=-E^{2} \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}$
$\Rightarrow \frac{d^{2}}{d x^{2}} \Psi=-p^{2} \cdot e^{i(\overline{p x}-E t)}$
$\Rightarrow E^{2}=\bar{p}^{2}+m^{2}$
if: $\begin{aligned} & \alpha_{1}^{2}=\alpha_{2}^{2}=\alpha_{3}^{2}=\beta^{2}=1 \\ & \alpha_{j} \alpha_{k}+\alpha_{k} \alpha_{j}=0 \text { for } j \neq k \\ & \alpha_{j} \beta+\beta \alpha_{j}=0\end{aligned}$
Dirac realized that this could not be fulfilled by giving $\alpha_{i}$ and $\beta$ just numbers but they had to be specified as matrices. Identify $\alpha_{i}$ with:

$$
\alpha_{i}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & \sigma_{i} \\
\sigma_{i} & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

and $\beta$ with:

$$
\beta=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
I & 0 \\
0 & -I
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $I$ is a $2 \times 2$ unit matrix and $\sigma$ are the Pauli spin matrices:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sigma_{1} & =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right) \\
\sigma_{2} & =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & -i \\
i & 0
\end{array}\right) \\
\sigma_{3} & =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
1 & 0 \\
0 & -1
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

### 2.10 Strangeness

As mentioned in the introduction only a handful of 'elementary' particles were known up to the era of particle accelerators. Matter could be explained as being built out of protons, neutrons and electrons, and the photon was just light of shorter wavelength. The discovery of the positron proved that there is antimatter but it it did not confuse the overall picture. However, when the muon was observed and identified as a heavier version of the electron, the physicists were puzzled and it caused somebody to ask 'Who ordered that?'.

Although the quarks were not introduced until 1963 it might be interesting to follow how physics developed over the coming years and how new observations can be understood in terms of quarks and leptons.

Until 1947 all observed particles could be explained by the following building blocks. Note that the neutrino particle had been predicted by Pauli in 1930, in order to explain the missing energy in $\beta$-decays, but they were not verified experimentally until 1956:

|  | charge | spin |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\nu$ | 0 | $1 / 2$ |
| $e$ | $\mu$ | -1 |
| $u$ | $2 / 3$ | $1 / 2$ |
| $d$ | $-1 / 3$ | $1 / 2$ |

On the quark level the proton would be described as being built out of a uud-state and the neutron would be a $u d d$-state. The lightest charge mesons are the pi-mesons, where the $\pi^{+}$is a $u \bar{d}$-state and the $\pi^{-}$is a $\bar{u} d$.

In 1947 so called 'V'-particles were observed from cosmic ray events in a cloud chamber. They were called ' V '-particles since they left ' V '-shaped tracks in the detector. The particles had a 'strange' behaviour in the sense that they were frequently produced, which is consistent with production through strong interaction ( $\tau \sim 10^{-23}$ s), but they had a long decay time ( $\tau \sim$ $10^{-10} s$ ).

In 1953 the following reaction was observed in a bubble chamber experiment. A bubble chamber works according to a similar principle as the cloud chamber but instead of having a supersaturated vapour, one uses a superheated transparent liquid, usually liquid hydrogen. As a track passes through the liquid the pressure is decreased by the movement of a pistion and the liquid starts boiling along the particle trajectory and small bubbles are created. The density of bubbles is proportional to the ionisation power of the particle. A photograph is taken as the bubbles have grown large enough and after that the piston increase the pressure again to stop the boiling process.

The experiment used a beam of pions which interact with the protons in the liquid hydrogen and gives rise to a reaction creating two V-particles: $\pi^{-}+p \rightarrow V+V$. An example of such a decay is shown below where the $\pi^{-}$meson is coming in from below in the pictures and interacts with a proton in the liquid hydrogen. The two pictures on the left show two different views of the same event and on the right the same event is shown again, now with the background tracks removed.


This reaction was identified as: $\pi^{-}+p \rightarrow K^{o}+\Lambda^{o}$ where $K^{o} \rightarrow \pi^{+}+\pi^{-}$and $\Lambda^{o} \rightarrow \pi^{-}+p$. The $K^{o}$-meson consists of a $d \bar{s}$ state and the $\Lambda^{o}$-baryon of a $u d s$-state.

The behaviour of the reaction could be explained if a new quantum number, called strangeness ( $S$ ), was introduced. $K^{o}$ was assigned $S=1$ and $\Lambda^{o} S=-1$. Strangeness is conserved in strong and electromagnetic interactions but broken in weak interaction.

Strangeness conserved in the production mechanism (strong interaction)

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
\Lambda^{o} & \rightarrow & \pi^{-} & + & \begin{array}{c}
\mathrm{p} \\
\text { (uds) }
\end{array} \\
& & (\bar{u} \mathrm{~d}) & & (\mathrm{uud}) \\
\mathrm{S}=-1 & & 0 & & 0 \\
K^{o} & \rightarrow & \pi^{+} & + & \pi^{-} \\
(\mathrm{d} \bar{s}) & & & (\mathrm{u} \bar{d}) & \\
(\bar{u} \mathrm{~d}) \\
\mathrm{S}=+1 & & 0 & & 0
\end{array}
$$

Strangeness not conserved in the decays (weak interaction)
As seen above, this led to the introduction of a third quark, the s-quark, with charge $-1 / 3$ and strangeness -1 .

$$
\begin{gathered}
\binom{\nu_{e}}{e^{-}}\binom{\nu_{\mu}}{\mu^{-}} \begin{array}{c}
\text { Charge } \\
0 \\
-1
\end{array} \\
\binom{u}{d}\left(\begin{array}{l} 
\\
s
\end{array}\right) \begin{array}{l}
+2 / 3 \\
-1 / 3
\end{array}
\end{gathered}
$$

According to the quark model all hadrons are made up from various combinations of quarks (and antiquarks). By combining the $u(\bar{u}), d(\bar{d})$ and $s(\bar{s})$ quarks in $q \bar{q}$ pairs or 3-quark systems all experimental hadrons found at the time could be constructed and grouped into multiplets of particles with similar properties.

Particles which consist of a quark and an antiquark are called mesons whereas particles built out of three quarks are called baryons. From some empty spaces in the multiplets new particles could be predicted and observed in experiments.

| Mesons, spin 0 |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | -1 | 0 | +1 | Charge |
| +1 |  | $\begin{gathered} K^{o} \\ (\mathrm{~d} \bar{s}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & K^{+} \\ & (u \bar{s}) \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 0 | $\begin{gathered} \pi^{-} \\ (d \bar{u}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \pi^{o}, \eta, \eta^{\prime} \\ (u \bar{u})(d \bar{d})(s \bar{s}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \pi^{+} \\ (u \bar{d}) \end{gathered}$ |  |
| -1 | $\begin{aligned} & K^{-} \\ & (s \bar{u}) \end{aligned}$ | $\bar{K}^{o}$ <br> $(s \bar{d})$ |  |  |
| Strangeness |  |  |  |  |

Mesons, spin 1

|  | -1 | 0 | +1 | Charge |
| ---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| +1 |  | $K^{* o}$ | $K^{*+}$ |  |
|  |  | $(d \bar{s})$ | $(u \bar{s})$ |  |
| 0 |  |  |  |  |
|  | $\rho^{-}$ | $\rho^{o}, \omega, \phi$ | $\rho^{+}$ |  |
| $(d \bar{u})$ | $(u \bar{u})(d \bar{d})(s \bar{s})$ | $(u \bar{d})$ |  |  |
| -1 | $K^{*-}$ | $\bar{K}^{* o}$ |  |  |
| Strangeness |  |  |  |  |
|  | $(s \bar{u})$ | $(s \bar{d})$ |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |

The particle states with charge zero and strangeness zero do not appear as pure quark-antiquark states but as mixed states of which one linear combination corresponds to an singlet state and
the others to octet states, as specified in the table below. Note that the quark content of the singlet states are completely symmetric with respect to the quark content.

| Meson |  | quark combination |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| spin 0 | spin 1 |  |  |
| $\pi^{o}$ | $\rho^{o}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(d \bar{d}-u \bar{u})$ | octet state |
| $\eta_{8} \equiv \eta$ | $\omega$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}(d \bar{d}+u \bar{u}-2 s \bar{s})$ | $-\cdots-$ |
| $\eta_{o} \equiv \eta^{\prime}$ | $\phi$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}(d \bar{d}+u \bar{u}+s \bar{s})$ | singlet state |

Baryons, spin 1/2

|  | -1 | 0 | +1 | Charge |
| ---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 |  | $\begin{array}{c}n \\ (u d d)\end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{c}\text { (uud) })\end{array}$ |  |
| -1 |  | $\Sigma^{-}$ | $\Lambda^{o}, \Sigma^{o}$ | $\Sigma^{+}$ |
| $(d d s)$ | $(u d s)$ | $(u u s)$ |  |  |
| -2 | $\Xi^{-}$ | $\Xi^{o}$ |  |  |
| Strangeness |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |

Baryons, spin 3/2


States like $\Delta^{++}$and $\Omega^{-}$do not obey the Pauli exclusion principle. The solution is to introduce a new quantum number called colour. Colour will be discussed in more detail later.

### 2.11 Isospin (Isotopic spin)

We can notice that there are many more hadrons than leptons and if we compare the hadrons within a multiplet we find, from experimental observations, that those with the same strangeness number have very similar properties. A closer look at the multiplets reveals that the exchange of u - and d-quarks or the antiquarks takes us from one hadron state to another. If we take the proton and the neutron as an example we see that although they have different electric charge they have the same spin, baryon number +1 and their masses differ only slightly. Both the proton and the neutron interact via strong interaction in the same way and this led Heisenberg in 1932 to the conclusion that the strong force does not make any difference between protons and neutrons i.e. it is not sensitive to electric charge. So, as far as the strong force is concerned there is only one nucleon and one pion etc. This phenomenon is called isospin symmetry, meaning that isotopic spin is conserved in strong interactions.

At the quark level this means that it is not possible to tell the difference between a u-and d-quark except by their electric charge or equivqlently only in electromagnetic interaction a difference is noticed between a proton and a neutron. If we compare to atomic physics we know that a spin-up $(\uparrow)$ electron can not be distinguished from a spin-down $(\downarrow)$ unless a magnetic field is applied. This causes the spin of the electrons to take two different orientations corresponding to two distinct states of the atom, separated in energy (fine structure). Just as the orientation of normal spin can only be observed under the influence of a magnetic field, the orientation
of the isospin can only be determined in an abtract isospin space through the presence of an electromagnetic field. The different orientations of isotopic spin correspond to different mass states i.e. different hadrons, related to the small mass difference between the $u$ - and d-quarks. Isotopic spin-up corresponds to a u-quark whereas isotopic spin-down corresponds to a d-quark and it is not possible to distinguish the two without the presence of an electromagnetic field. Thus, the u - and d-quarks have isospin $I=1 / 2$ with the third components $I_{3}=+1 / 2$ (u-quark) and $I_{3}=-1 / 2$ (d-quark).

|  | Spin |  |  | Isotopic spin |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Quantu | numbers | State vectors | Quantum | numbers | State vectors |
| Doublet | $s=1 / 2$ | $\begin{aligned} & s_{z}=-1 / 2 \\ & s_{z}=+1 / 2 \end{aligned}$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{aligned} & \mid \downarrow> \\ & \mid \uparrow> \end{aligned}\right.$ | $I=1 / 2$ | $\begin{aligned} & I_{3}=-1 / 2 \\ & I_{3}=+1 / 2 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mid d> \\ & \mid u> \end{aligned}$ |
| Singlet | $s=0$ | $s_{z}=0$ | $\left.\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right\rvert\, \uparrow \downarrow-\downarrow \uparrow>$ | $I=0$ | $I_{3}=0$ | $\left.\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right\rvert\, u d-d u>$ |
| Triplet | $s=1$ | $\begin{aligned} & s_{z}=-1 \\ & s_{z}=0 \\ & s_{z}=+1 \end{aligned}$ | $\left\lvert\, \begin{aligned} & \|\downarrow \downarrow\rangle \\ & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\|\uparrow \downarrow+\downarrow \uparrow\rangle \\ & \|\uparrow \uparrow\rangle \end{aligned}\right.$ | $I=1$ | $\begin{aligned} I_{3} & =-1 \\ I_{3} & =0 \\ I_{3} & =+1 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mid d d> \\ & \left.\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right\rvert\, u d+d u> \\ & \mid u u> \end{aligned}$ |

For a doublet of particles, like the proton and neutron, the isospins of the quarks add up in a linear combination giving a total isospin of $1 / 2$, where $+1 / 2$ represents the proton and $-1 / 2$ the neutron. A triplet of particles, like the pions, has isospion 1 , with +1 representing $\pi^{+}, 0$ representing $\pi^{o}$ and -1 represeting $\pi^{-}$. In the decuplet we have four states of $\Delta$-particles giving an isospin of $3 / 2$, with $+3 / 2$ representing $\Delta^{++},+1 / 2$ representing $\Delta^{+},-1 / 2$ representing $\Delta^{o}$ and $-3 / 2$ representing $\Delta^{-}$.

The isospin $I$ of a family of particles, affected in the same way by the strong force, is related to the number of states in the family, according to:
number of states $=2 I+1$

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
2 \text { states } \Rightarrow 2 I+1 & \Rightarrow I=1 / 2 \\
3 \text { states } \Rightarrow 2 I+1 & \Rightarrow I=1 \\
4 \text { states } \Rightarrow 2 I+1 & \Rightarrow I=3 / 2
\end{array}
$$



Instead of using electric charge in the representation of the multiplets we can replace it with isospin. We have seen that the third component if the isospin is $I_{3}=-1 / 2$ for the d-quark, whereas it for the u-quark is $I_{3}=+1 / 2$. The isospin for a singlet state is $I_{3}=0$, which corresponds to the s-quark. If we construct the basic quark and antiquark multiplets in the isospin-strangeness space, they would look like as shown in the figure below. By combining the quark and antiquark triplets in various ways we can reconstruct the hadron multiplets. One example is shown in the figure below.


The composition of the possible 3 quark combinations is a bit more complicated than that for the mesons, but can be obtained using the same techniques. You may notice that the position of
the hadrons are symmetric around $I_{3}=0$, thus we have isospin symmetry. As an example the complete multiplet for mesons of spin zero is shown below.

Mesons, spin 0

|  | -1 | -1/2 | 0 | 1/2 | +1 | $I_{3}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| +1 |  | $\begin{gathered} K^{o} \\ (\mathrm{~d} \bar{s}) \end{gathered}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & K^{+} \\ & (u \bar{s}) \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| 0 | $\begin{gathered} \pi^{-} \\ (d \bar{u}) \end{gathered}$ |  | $\begin{gathered} \pi^{o}, \eta, \eta^{\prime} \\ (u \bar{u})(d \bar{d})(s \bar{s}) \end{gathered}$ |  | $\begin{gathered} \pi^{+} \\ (u \bar{d}) \end{gathered}$ |  |
| -1 |  | $\begin{aligned} & K^{-} \\ & (s \bar{u}) \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \bar{K}^{o} \\ & (s \bar{d}) \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| Strangeness |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## Chapter 3

## The Forces of Nature

In the investigation of the forces of nature we want to establish the sources of the forces and the intrinsic strength of the interaction to which they give rise. Further, we are interested in the space-time properties of the force; how it propagates through space and how it affects the motion of particles under its influence. Finally, we must consider both the macroscopic (or classical) description of the force (where appropriate) and the microscopic (or quantum-mechanical) picture (where possible).

We experience two fundamental forces on the macroscopic scale in our daily life; the gravitational force that keeps our solar system together and ensure that we stay on earth, and the electromagnetic force which acts between objects carrying electric charge. Both act over long distances and the force is proportional to the inverse square of the distance between the objects. The well-known formula which describes the gravitational attraction of two objects with the masses $m_{1}$ and $m_{2}$ separated by a distance $r$ can be written:
$F=G \cdot \frac{m_{1} m_{2}}{r^{2}}$
where $G$ is a constant of proportionality, the gravitational constant.
Already in 1865 J.C. Maxwell managed to unify the concepts of electricity and magnetism into one theory of electromagnetism. The force is mediated by the electromagnetic field. For two static objects with electric charges $e_{1}$ and $e_{2}$ at a distance $r$ the force is:
$F=k \cdot \frac{e_{1} e_{2}}{r^{2}}$
where $k$ is again a proportionality constant. The difference to gravitation is that the electromagnetic force can not only be attractive but also be repulsive. With the advent of quantum mechanics in the first decades of the 20th century it was realized that the electromagnetic field, including light, is quantized and can be seen as a stream of particles, photons. In a similar way the gravitational force is believed to be mediated by particles called gravitons, but since gravitation is of the order of $10^{37}$ times weaker than the electromagnetic force, the gravitons have not yet been observed.

In addition to these long range forces there are also two forces that only act over short distances; the strong force that holds a nucleus together and the weak force that is responsible for radiactive
decays. A natural route to follow for a description of these forces was to search for a mechanism like the one, which so succesfully describes the electromagnetic force.
The simplest manifestation of the weak force is the well-known $\beta$-decay where a neutron decays into a proton, an electron and an antineutrino. E. Fermi described this decay by assuming that, at a single point in space-time, the quantum-mechanical wave function of the neutron is transformed into that of the proton and that the wavefunction of the incoming neutrino, which is equivalent to an outgoing antineutrino, is transformed into that of an electron. Although this theory of point-like interactions was succesful at the time, it turned out that it was not sufficient to describe data at higher energies. To solve this problem and to put the description of weak interaction on a common ground to the succesful theory of electromagnetism a field theory with a particle exchange mechanism had to be introduced. However, since the electromagnetic force has a long range which is mediated by the massless photon it was assumed that the weak force has to be mediated by a massive particle to accomodate the short range of the force. In a generalization of quantum electrodynamics S. Glashow, S. Weinberg and A. Salam succeeded in formulating the electroweak theory which is a common theory for electromagnetic and weak interactions and contain several mediating particles, $W^{+}, W^{-}$and $Z^{\circ}$, which can also interact with each other. The strength of the weak force is of the order of $10^{6}$ times weaker than that of the strong force. This has been estimated by comparing the decay times of the processes $\Delta^{-}(d d d) \rightarrow n(u d d)+\pi^{-}(\bar{u} d)$ and $\Sigma^{-}(d d s) \rightarrow n(u d d)+\pi(\bar{u} d)$. Since strangeness is broken in the $\Sigma^{-}$-decay it has to proceed via the weak interaction and thus the lifetime is several orders of magnitude longer than the $\Delta^{-}$-decay which follows the strong interaction. The probabilty for a decay is related to how strongly the force mediator couples to the quarks, which in turn is related to the decay time. The ratio of the decay times is therefore a measure of the relative strength of the weak force compared to the strong.
In 1935 H . Yukawa proposed that the strong force is mediated by a new particle in analogy with the electromagnetic and weak forces. Knowing the approximate range of the strong force $10^{-15}$ meter (the size of the nucleon), the mass of the particle could be estimated to 100-200 $\mathrm{MeV} / \mathrm{c}^{2}$. This particle was called the pion $(\pi)$. A couple of years after the prediction of the pion a particle in this mass range was discovered in cosmic rays, but later it was understood that this particle has too weak an interaction compared to what is needed for strong interaction. Instead it turned out that the observed particle is a heavier version of the electron, the muon $(\mu)$. The pion was not discovered until 1947. Eventually it turned out that the pion, like a large number of other hadrons discovered in the 1950's, was not an elementary particle but they were composit particles, built out of quarks and antiquarks. In a more careful study of the strong force it was shown that it has properties, which are different from those of the electromagnetic and weak forces. The specific behaviour of the strong force could be related to the properties of the massless force mediator, the gluon, which also explains the short range of the strong force.
It is believed that the four fundamental forces of nature as we experience them in our daily life are just different appearances of the same force, such that if we go to high enough energy ( $10^{19}$ GeV ) the forces should be of the same strength. It should thus be possible to formulate a theory which describes the interactions of all the forces.
In the following sections we will discuss in more detail the electromagnetic, weak and strong forces. First, however, we must introduce the concept of virtual particles.

### 3.1 Vacuum and Virtual Particles

Vacuum is normally regarded as empty space. This is, however, not quite so from a quantum mechanics point of view, where vacuum can be assumed to be full of activity. According to the Heisenberg uncertainty principle, $\Delta E \cdot \Delta t \geq \hbar$, non-zero energy may be created from vacuum over short periods of time. This means that particles continously can appear and disappear as long as it happens within a time that is given by the uncertainty principle. Such quantum fluctuations can not be observed due to the uncertainty in energy, and since the particles produced can not be measured directly they are called virtual particles. The quantum fluctuation itself is not allowed according to the laws of physics (energy and momentum conservation) and consequently the virtual particles do also not obey the conservation laws.

A real particle satisfies the relation $p^{2}=E^{2} / c^{2}-\bar{p}^{2}=m_{o}^{2} c^{2}$, where $m_{o}$ is the mass of the particle at rest. However, for a virtual particle $p^{2}=E^{2} / c^{2}-\bar{p}^{2}$ can take any value, which means that the mass (four-momentum) of a virtual particle is not the same as the mass (fourmomentum) of the corresponding real particle.

According to field theories the various interactions proceed via the exchange of force mediating particles or field particles. Each particle is surrounded by a cloud of all kinds of field particles that couple to that specific particle. For example charged leptons are surrounded by a cloud of photons and weak force mediators, whereas neutrino particles are only surrounding itself with weak force mediators. Quarks is accompanied by a cloud of gluons as well as photons and weak force mediators. Normally the field particles are reabsorbed by the same particle but in case one is absorbed by another particle we have an interaction. This must then happen within the time that the field particle exists, which is given by the uncertainty principle, and thus it can not be directly observed.

### 3.2 Electromagnetic Interaction and QED

The electromagnetic force, which acts between particles carrying electric charge, is quite well understood. Since the force has an infinite range it also has an influence on macroscopic phenomena. The force between two particles with unlike charges is attractive whereas the force between particles carrying like charges is repulsive. The strength is given by Coulomb's law:
$F=k \cdot \frac{q_{1} \cdot q_{2}}{r^{2}}$
where $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$ are the charges and $r$ is the distance between them.
A consistent quantum theory, Quantum Electrodynamics (QED), for electromagnetic interactions was formulated in the mid 1960's. According to this theory the interaction between electrically charged particles occurs via the electromagnetic field as an exchange of the field quanta, the photons, between the interacting particles. Charged particles can emit and absorb photons.

### 3.2.1 Feynamn Diagrams

R. Feynman invented a very useful diagrammatical formulation to illustrate the interactions. To each particle he introduced a propagator describing the free propagation of the particle. The theory then defines the interaction vertices, which are combined with propagators to build a specific diagram. Feynman also introduced the rule that a particle going backwards in time corresponds to an antiparticle going forward in time. Considering electromagnetic interactions and assuming time to proceed from left to right, the representation of the three particles are:

| Image | Description | Particle Represented |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\sim$ | straight line, arrow to the right | electron |
|  | straight line, arrow to the left | positron |
| $\sim \sim \sim$ | wavy line | photon |

Any line for a propagating charged particle and any line for a propagating photon can be combined and they are tied together in a vertex, giving the following possibilities:
An An An electron emits a photon

### 3.2.2 Electromagnetic Scattering Processes

The simplest diagram for the interaction between two electrons is:


One of the electrons emits a photon, which is absorbed by the other.
$\Rightarrow \quad \bar{p}^{\prime}=\bar{p}-\bar{q}$
and this reaction can be regarded as a sum of:
1st step: photon emission end step: photon absorption


Momentum conservation gives:
$\bar{p}^{\prime}=\bar{p}-\bar{q} \Rightarrow \bar{p}^{\prime}+\bar{q}=\bar{p}$
Let us now see if energy conservation $E^{\prime}+E_{\gamma}=E$ holds in the above diagrams:
$E^{\prime}=\sqrt{\bar{p}^{\prime 2}+m_{e}^{2}}=\sqrt{|\bar{p}-\bar{q}|^{2}+m_{e}^{2}}$
If the photon is real $E_{\gamma}=\sqrt{\left|\bar{q}^{2}\right|}$
$\Rightarrow E^{\prime}+E_{\gamma}=\sqrt{|\bar{p}-\bar{q}|^{2}+m_{e}^{2}}+|\bar{q}|$
$=\sqrt{|\bar{p}|^{2}+|\bar{q}|^{2}-2 \overline{p q}+m_{e}^{2}}+|\bar{q}|$
$\neq \sqrt{|\bar{p}|^{2}+m_{e}^{2}}=E$
$\Rightarrow$ Energy conservation is violated and the process should not be able to happen. However, if the violation of the energy and momentum conservation occurs within a time interval shorter
than given by the Heisenberg uncertainty principle, $\Delta E \Delta t \sim \hbar$, it is allowed. It should be realized that if the energy is not conserved then the relation $E^{2}=\bar{p}^{2}+m^{2}$ tells us that the mass of the photon might be not be zero. If the photon is absorbed by the other electron within the time $\Delta t$ the process will occur. If not, the photon will be reabsorbed by the same electron. This explains how an electron propagating through space can be surrounded by a cloud of photons. Photons are constantly emitted and reabsorbed by the electron within the time given by Heisenberg's uncertainty principle. These photons are called virtual photons and may have a non-zero mass due to the fluctuation of energy in a very short time.
Some other examples of diagrams with virtual photons are:


One necessary condition for a process, which involves the exchange of a force quantum, to happen is that the energy of the initial and final states are the same.

### 3.2.3 Calculation of scattering amplitudes

Consider the electron-electron scattering process below:


Electron-electron scattering diagram $X$.
$\bar{p}_{1}=\bar{p}_{1}^{\prime}+\bar{q} \Rightarrow \bar{q}=\bar{p}_{1}-\bar{p}_{1}^{\prime}$
$\bar{p}_{2}+\bar{q}=\bar{p}_{2}^{\prime} \Rightarrow \bar{q}=\bar{p}_{2}^{\prime}-\bar{p}_{2}$
The electron $e_{1}$ emits a virtual photon which after some time is absorbed by the electron $e_{2}$.
$\Rightarrow \Delta t \sim \frac{\hbar}{\Delta E}=\frac{\hbar}{E_{n}-E_{i}}$
Electrostatic attraction: $\quad F=k \cdot \frac{q_{1} q_{2}}{r^{2}} \Rightarrow$ the strength is given by the charge.


In quantum mechanics the motion of a particle is described by a wavefunction and the probability to observe the particle in a given state is given by the wavefunction squared. The photon is a quantum of the electromagnetic field and the number of photons surrounding an electrically charged particle is given by the strength of this field, which is proportional to the charge of the particle.

A certain process is described by how the wavefunction is changing with time. The probability that the process occurs is thus given by the square of the wavefunction describing that process. In order to describe the above process we have to consider how the wavefunction changes from representing a single electron to an electron which emits a photon which is then absorbed by another electron. The probability that the electron emits a photon is related to the strength of the electromagnetic coupling, which is given by a coupling constant, $\alpha$ (the fine structure constant), where $\alpha=\frac{e^{2}}{4 \pi \epsilon_{o} \hbar c}$, with $-e$ being the charge of the electron and $\epsilon_{o}$ the vacuum permittivity. In other units the fundamental unit of charge can be given as $g_{e}=\sqrt{4 \pi \alpha}$, which means that the coupling strength is given by $\alpha=\frac{g_{e}^{2}}{4 \pi}$. In the following we will use the notation $-e$ for the charge of the electron. The probability (or more correctly, the amplitude) that a photon is emitted by an electron is thus proportional to $-e$. Further, the probability (or amplitude) that a photon, which has been emitted by one electron, will be absorbed by another one within the time $\Delta t$ is related to $\Delta t \cdot(-e)$.

The scattering amplitude for the process X is then:
$X=(-e) \cdot \Delta t \cdot(-e)=\frac{e^{2} \hbar}{\Delta E}=\frac{e^{2} \hbar}{\left(E_{n}-E_{i}\right)}$
The following process gives the same final state.


Electron-electron scattering diagram $Y$.
$\bar{p}_{1}+\bar{q}^{\prime}=\bar{p}_{1}^{\prime} \Rightarrow \bar{q}^{\prime}=\bar{p}_{1}^{\prime}-\bar{p}_{1}$
$\bar{p}_{2}=\bar{p}_{2}^{\prime}+\bar{q}^{\prime} \Rightarrow \bar{q}^{\prime}=\bar{p}_{2}-\bar{p}_{2}^{\prime}$
$\Rightarrow \bar{q}^{\prime}=\left(\bar{p}_{2}-\bar{p}_{2}^{\prime}\right)=\left(\bar{p}_{1}^{\prime}-\bar{p}_{1}\right)=-\left(\bar{p}_{1}-\bar{p}_{1}^{\prime}\right)=-\bar{q}$
The amplitude is:
$Y=(-e) \cdot \frac{\hbar}{\left(E_{n}^{\prime}-E_{i}\right)} \cdot(-e)$
With $\bar{q}^{\prime}=-\bar{q}$ we have $E_{\gamma}=|\bar{q}|=\left|\bar{q}^{\prime}\right|=E_{\gamma}^{\prime}$
Diagram X: $\quad E_{i}=E_{1}+E_{2} ; \quad E_{n}=E_{\gamma}+E_{1}^{\prime}+E_{2} \Rightarrow E_{n}-E_{i}=E_{\gamma}+E_{1}^{\prime}-E_{1}$
Diagram Y: $\quad E_{i}=E_{1}+E_{2} ; \quad E_{n}^{\prime}=E_{2}^{\prime}+E_{\gamma}+E_{1} \Rightarrow E_{n}^{\prime}-E_{i}=E_{2}^{\prime}+E_{\gamma}-E_{2}=$ $E_{1}+E_{\gamma}-E_{1}^{\prime}$
where we have used energy conservation: $E_{1}+E_{2}=E_{1}^{\prime}+E_{2}^{\prime} \Rightarrow E_{2}^{\prime}-E_{2}=E_{1}-E_{1}^{\prime}$
Since we can not distinguish the two diagrams X and Y we have to add the amplitudes and square in order to obtain the probability (cross section) for the process to happen.

### 3.2.4 Differential Cross Section

Consider a parallel beam of particles incident on a thin slice of material containing N scattering centres per volume unit.


The flux of particles (particles per unit area and unit time) can be written $\Phi=n_{o} \cdot v$ where $n_{o}$ is the density of particles in the incoming beam (number of particles per unit volume) and $v$ their velocity with respect to the target. If we have a detector sitting at a polar angle $\theta$, covering a solid angle $d \Omega\left(d \Omega=d s / r^{2}\right.$, where $d s$ is the area of the detector and $r$ the distance to the detector from the target), the number of particles per unit time observed in the detector would be

$$
d n=\sigma(\theta) d \Omega \cdot \Phi \cdot N=d \sigma \cdot \Phi \cdot N
$$

since $\sigma(\theta)=\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega}$ is the probability that a particle is scattered an angle $\theta$, within the solid angle $d \Omega$. The differential cross section is then

$$
\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega}=\frac{1}{\Phi \cdot N} \cdot \frac{d n}{d \Omega}
$$

which is the number of scattered particles per unit time and solid angle divided by the number of incoming particles per unit time and area. The total cross section is defined as the differential cross section integrated over the total solid angle (except including particle going straight ahead):

$$
\sigma=\int \frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} d \Omega
$$

In quantum mechanics, the differential cross section for electron-electron scattering is the sum of the amplitudes X and Y squared.
$\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim|X+Y|^{2}=\left|\frac{e^{2}}{E_{n}-E_{i}}+\frac{e^{2}}{E_{n}^{\prime}-E_{i}}\right|^{2} \approx e^{4}\left(\frac{1}{E_{n}-E_{i}}+\frac{1}{E_{n}^{\prime}-E_{i}}\right)^{2}=$
$=e^{4}\left(\frac{1}{E_{\gamma}+E_{1}^{\prime}-E_{1}}+\frac{1}{E_{1}+E_{\gamma}-E_{1}^{\prime}}\right)^{2}=$
$=e^{4}\left(\frac{E_{1}+E_{\gamma}-E_{1}^{\prime}+E_{\gamma}+E_{1}^{\prime}-E_{1}}{\left(E_{\gamma}+E_{1}^{\prime}-E_{1}\right)\left(E_{1}+E_{\gamma}-E_{1}^{\prime}\right)}\right)^{2}=$
$=e^{4}\left(\frac{2 E_{\gamma}}{\left(E_{\gamma}-\left(E_{1}-E_{1}^{\prime}\right)\left(E_{\gamma}+\left(E_{1}-E_{1}^{\prime}\right)\right)\right.}\right)^{2}=$
$=e^{4}\left(\frac{2 E_{\gamma}}{E_{\gamma}^{2}-\left(E_{1}-E_{1}^{\prime}\right)^{2}}\right)^{2}$
The factor $2 E_{\gamma}$ does not appear if we do an exact calculation.
We introduce $E_{\gamma}^{2}=|\bar{q}|^{2}+m_{\gamma}^{2}$; where $m_{\gamma}=0$ is the rest mass of the photon.
$\epsilon=E_{1}-E_{1}^{\prime} \quad$ (the energy the photon would have had if energy was conserved, which is true for the whole scattering process)
$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim e^{4}\left(\frac{2 E_{\gamma}}{\left(\left.\overline{\mid}\right|^{2}-\epsilon^{2}+m_{\gamma}^{2}\right.}\right)^{2} \sim$
$\sim e^{4}\left(\frac{1}{|\overline{\mid}|^{2}-\epsilon^{2}+m_{\gamma}^{2}}\right)^{2}$
but $q^{2}=\epsilon^{2}-|\bar{q}|^{2} ; \quad$ where $q$ is the four-momentum transfered by the exchanged photon as calculated from the conservation of energy and momentum ;
from $q=p_{1}^{\prime}-p_{1}$ with $p_{1}^{\prime 2}=E_{1}^{\prime 2}-\left|\overline{p_{1}^{\prime}}\right|^{2}$ and $p_{1}^{2}=E_{1}^{2}-\left|\bar{p}_{1}\right|^{2}$
$\Rightarrow \frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim e^{4}\left(\frac{1}{m_{\gamma}^{2}-q^{2}}\right)^{2}$
This is the general expression which can be used also for massive exchange particles if the photon mass is replaced by the rest mass of the particle which is responsible for the interaction. For a photon we get:

$$
\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim e^{4}\left(\frac{1}{-q^{2}}\right)^{2} \quad\left(m_{\gamma}=0\right)
$$

In the center-of-mass system:

$E_{1}=E_{2}=E_{1}^{\prime}=E_{2}^{\prime} \quad\left|\bar{p}_{1}\right|=\left|\bar{p}_{2}\right|=\left|\bar{p}_{1}^{\prime}\right|=\left|\bar{p}_{2}^{\prime}\right|$
The 4-momentum squared transferred by the virtual photon is:
$q^{2}=\left(p_{1}-p_{1}^{\prime}\right)^{2}=p_{1}^{2}+p_{1}^{\prime 2}-2 p_{1} p_{1}^{\prime}=$
$=m_{e}^{2}+m_{e}^{2}-2\left(E_{1} E_{1}^{\prime}-\left|\bar{p}_{1}\right|\left|\bar{p}_{1}^{\prime}\right| \cos \theta\right)$
but we assume $E_{1}=E_{2} \gg m_{e} \quad$ and thus we have $E=E_{1}=E_{1}^{\prime} \approx\left|\bar{p}_{1}\right|=\left|\bar{p}_{1}^{\prime}\right|$
$\Rightarrow q^{2}=-2 E^{2}(1-\cos \theta)=-2 E^{2} \cdot 2 \sin ^{2} \frac{\theta}{2}=-4 E^{2} \sin ^{2} \frac{\theta}{2} \quad$ since $\quad \sin ^{2} \frac{\theta}{2}=(1-\cos \theta) / 2$
$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim \frac{e^{4}}{E^{4} \sin ^{4} \frac{\theta}{2}}$
This is the classical Rutherford formula for scattering in a potential $\mathrm{V}=1 / \mathrm{r}$.

### 3.2.5 Higher Order Contributions to $e e$ Scattering

In these calculations we have only considered the contribution from the diagram of lowest order in the electromagnetic coupling constant $(\alpha)$, where we have only one photon exchange. The problem that we encounter is that we can add more diagrams by just adding more internal lines such that the total number of possible diagrams giving the same final state becomes infinite.


However, we have already pointed out that the strength of the interactions between two electrons is proportional to the electric charge. A dimensionless measure of the interactions strength is given by the electromagnetic coupling strength (or fine structure constant), $\alpha=\frac{e^{2}}{4 \pi \epsilon_{o} \hbar c}$. Each vertex adds a factor $\alpha$, but since $\alpha$ is small ( $\sim 1 / 137$ ), diagrams of higher orders in $\alpha$ (more vertices) will give smaller contributions than lower order $\alpha$ diagram (fewer vertices), and consequently the cross section can be written as a converging series expansion in terms of $\alpha$.
$\sigma=O(\alpha)+O\left(\alpha^{2}\right)+O\left(\alpha^{3}\right)+\ldots$

### 3.2.6 Regularization and Renormalization

Experimentally the cross section (scattering amplitude) of a process with specific initial and final state can be measured but the experimental information does not explain how the initial state turned into the final state. As we have mentioned in section 3.2.5, discussing ee-scattering we can imagine an infinite number of diagrams that describes a process with specific initial and final states by just adding more virtual particles to the intermediate state. Internal propagators can be added and combined in an infinite number of ways. This is not only true for ee-interactions but for all electromagnetic, weak and strong interactions. The most basic diagram is the one with the least number of coupling vertices between the virtual force mediator (propagator) and the incoming and outgoing particles, respectively. More complicated diagrams are of higher orders in the coupling constant.

Although the energies and momenta of the initial and final state particles are well defined this is not so for the virtual particles of the intermediate state (internal propagators). They indeed
obey energy and momentum conservation, but even so they can violate basic kinematic rules, which are valid for real particles. For example $m^{2}=E^{2} p^{2}$ must not necessarily be the invariant mass of the particles involved in the process because the virtual particles can have any energy and momentum such that a virtual photon can have a mass different from zero. In this case the particle is said to be off-shell.

Especially diagrams containing loops of particles cause a problem. Loops arise when for example a photon creates a virtual electron-positron pair and subsequently annihilates. These loop particles have no unique energy and momentum but a change of the energy and momentum of one particle has to be balanced by the energy and momentum of the other particle in the loop. Thus, in order to calculate the scattering amplitude (cross section) of a specific process we have, according to the summation rule of Feynman, to sum up the contributions from all possible diagrams that lead from the initial state to the final state. This will lead to an infinite power series in the coupling strength. However, this is not all, we also have to integrate over all momenta of the virtual particles. Such calculations are not only a mathematical challenge but also lead to infinities that are unphysical. The integration over momenta frequently diverges at large loop momenta (ultraviolet divergencies). Since particles in the theory are treated as massless the loops also lead to infrared divergencies. Such divergences can, however, be controlled by mathematical methods called regularization and renormalization. In the following we will discuss how this is implemented in QED but the same general arguments are also valid for QCD

## Regularization

The challenge of regularization is to explicitly calculate the divergent integral:

$$
I=\int_{0}^{\infty} d^{4} k F(k)
$$

where k is the four-momentum. This has to be done in such a way that the final result does not depend on the regularization scheme chosen. There are a number of regularization schemes on the market but we will discuss only the one called 'Momentum Cutoff', just to give an example. In this method the integral is not performed to infinity but to a very large momentum, $\Lambda$, which then gives:

$$
I \rightarrow I_{\Lambda}=\int_{0}^{\Lambda} d^{4} k F(k)
$$

where $I_{\Lambda}$ is certainly convergent and approaches $I$ as $\Lambda$ approaches infinity. If we perform the integral $I_{\Lambda}$ the result can be parameterized in the following way:

$$
I_{\Lambda}=A(\Lambda)+B+C(1 / \Lambda)
$$

where in the limit $\Lambda \rightarrow \infty$, A is divergent, C vanishes and B is independent of $\Lambda$ and thus remains finite. So, the problem is now to find a way to get rid of the divergent piece.

## Renormalization

As we have demonstrated in the previous sections the calculation of scattering amplitudes includes contribution from the coupling strength (in principle the charge) at the various vertices
and the four-momentum (mass) of the propagator. Thus, the integral we have considered can be written as a function of mass, $m$, coupling strength, $\alpha$ and the momentum cutoff, $\Lambda$ :

$$
I \rightarrow I(m, \alpha, \Lambda)
$$

In the theory the coupling strength is, however, given by the bare charge and the propagator four-mometum includes the bare mass, which can never be measured. These differ from the physical masses and physical charges, as observed from experimental measurements, by the fact that every particle is surrounded by a cloud of virtual particles. The relation between the physical (renormalized) and bare parameters includes the contributions from higher order diagrams and can be written:
$m \rightarrow m(\Lambda) \equiv m_{o}+\delta m(\Lambda)$
$\alpha \rightarrow \alpha(\Lambda) \equiv \alpha_{o}+\delta \alpha(\Lambda)$
$I(m, \alpha, \Lambda) \rightarrow I(m(\Lambda), \alpha(\Lambda))$,
where $m_{o}$ and $\alpha_{o}$ are the bare mass and bare coupling, respectively, whereas $\delta m(\Lambda)$ and $\delta \alpha(\Lambda)$ are the contributions from higher order diagrams.

What we have achieved with this operation is to absorb all of the divergent behaviour into the physical parameters, $m(\Lambda)$ and $\alpha(\Lambda)$, such that $I$ is no longer explicitly divergent but merely depend on physical quantities, which, however, will diverge as $\Lambda$ approaches infinity. The next step is to specify the renormalization conditions:
$m(\Lambda) \rightarrow m_{R}$
$\alpha(\Lambda) \rightarrow \alpha_{R}$
where $R$ stands for renormalized in the physical limit. Then the final result is simply $I\left(m_{R}, \alpha_{R}\right)$, whith $m_{R}$ and $\alpha_{R}$ being the quantities we measure for the electron mass and coupling, respectively. This result has a finite value.

Now, it has to be kept in mind that each regularization scheme gives finite parts that differ such that the details of the regularization scheme have to be specified as the final answer is given. This is called the subtraction scheme. Thus, as the final renormalization answer is quoted also the subtraction scheme used to renormalize the observable quantities has to be given.

Two of the mostly used subtraction schemes are the minimal subtraction ( $M S$ ), where only the divergent part of the amplitude is subtracted and the modified minimal subtraction $(\overline{M S})$, in which certain additional finite terms are subtracted from the $M S$-scheme.

It might be hard to accept that the values of the bare mass and bare charge of an electron are infinite. The explanation stems from the fact that many of the intrinsic properties of an electron are tied to the electromagnetic field that it carries around with it. The energy carried by a single electron, the self energy, is not only the bare value but also includes the energy contained in its electromagnetic field. As we have discussed in section 3.1 electrons can emit spontaneously virtual photons through quantum fluctuations, which can subsequently split up into an electronpostron pair. In this way the electron is always accompanied by a cloud of virtual photons and virtual electron-positron pairs through its interaction with the electromagnetic field. This cloud screens the bare charge so the measured charge is reduced and dependent on the distance (energy) at which the measurement is performed (see also section 3.6.2). An evidence that this is the case is that in our everyday world $\alpha=\frac{1}{137}$, whereas its value decreases at higher energies as
measured by accelerator experiments. So the deeper we penetrate the cloud of virtual particles the larger the charge and mass of the electron gets.

In order to make contact with reality, the formulae should be rewritten in terms of measurable, renormalized quantities. Thus, the charge of the electron, for example, should be defined in terms of a quantity measured at a specific kinematic renormalization point or subtraction point, which normally has a characteristic energy, called the renormalization scale or simply the energy scale, but it also depends on the subtraction scheme.

### 3.2.7 Summary of Amplitude Calculations



- Four-momentum is conserved
- Internal lines

where $P$ is the four-momentum of the exchanged particle and $M$ is the rest mass of the propagator.

Probability $=\mid$ Amplitude $\left.\right|^{2}$
The total amplitude for scattering between two electrons (or any other process) is the sum of the amplitudes for all contributing diagrams.

### 3.2.8 Pair Production and Annihilation

In a time-like exchange, annihilation and pair production looks like:


The above diagrams can be modified such that instead of creating a photon by electron-positron annihilation, a photon can be annihilated by the electron-positron pair and we are left with vacuum. Similarly an electron-positron pair can be created out of vacuum together with a photon.


These processes can not occur by themselves since energy and momentum are not conserved, but they can be part of processes with two vertices like the ones below.


In the upper process the $e^{+} e^{-}$-pair annihilates into a photon, which then creates an $e^{+} e^{-}$-pair. In the lower process the $e^{+} e^{-}$-pair is first created out of vacuum together with the photon, which then is annihilated with the $e^{+} e^{-}$-pair.

1) $E_{n}-E_{i}=E_{\gamma}-\left(E_{1}+E_{2}\right)=E_{\gamma}-\epsilon$
$\epsilon=E_{1}+E_{2}$ (the energy the photon would have had if energy was conserved)
2) $E_{n^{\prime}}-E_{i}=E_{1}+E_{2}+E_{\gamma}+E_{1}^{\prime}+E_{2}^{\prime}-\left(E_{1}+E_{2}\right)$
but $E_{1}=E_{2}=E_{1}^{\prime}=E_{2}^{\prime}$; in the centre-of-mass system
and $\epsilon=E_{1}+E_{2}=E_{1}^{\prime}+E_{2}^{\prime}$
$\Rightarrow E_{n}^{\prime}-E_{i}=2 \epsilon+E_{\gamma}-\epsilon=E_{\gamma}+\epsilon$

Again we can not distinguish between the two diagrams. We therefore have to add their amplitudes and square to get the probability.
$\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim\left|\frac{e^{2}}{E_{n}-E_{i}}+\frac{e^{2}}{E_{n^{\prime}}-E_{i}}\right|^{2}=e^{4}\left|\frac{1}{E_{n}-E_{i}}+\frac{1}{E_{n^{\prime}}-E_{i}}\right|^{2}=e^{4}\left|\frac{1}{E_{\gamma}-\epsilon}+\frac{1}{E_{\gamma}+\epsilon}\right|^{2}=e^{4}\left|\frac{E_{\gamma}+\epsilon+E_{\gamma}-\epsilon}{\left(E_{\gamma}-\epsilon\right)\left(E_{\gamma}+\epsilon\right)}\right|^{2}=$ $e^{4}\left|\frac{2 E_{\gamma}}{E_{\gamma}^{2}-\epsilon^{2}}\right|^{2}$
but $E_{\gamma}^{2}=|\bar{q}|^{2}+m_{\gamma}^{2}$
$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim e^{4}\left(\frac{1}{\left(|\bar{q}|^{2}-\epsilon^{2}+m_{\gamma}^{2}\right.}\right)^{2}$
Now $q^{2}=\epsilon^{2}-|\bar{q}|^{2}$ where $q$ is the four momentum of the photon
with $q^{2}=p_{1}^{2}+p_{2}^{2}, \quad p_{1}^{2}=E_{1}^{2}-\left|\bar{p}_{1}\right|^{2}, \quad p_{2}^{2}=E_{2}^{2}-\left|\bar{p}_{2}\right|^{2}$
$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim e^{4}\left(\frac{1}{\left(\epsilon^{2}-q^{2}-\epsilon^{2}+m_{\gamma}^{2}\right.}\right)^{2}$
$\sim e^{4}\left(\frac{1}{\left(m_{\gamma}^{2}-q^{2}\right)}\right)^{2}$
The sum of the two contributing diagrams are by convention drawn as:

which is the time like contribution, where $Q$ is the four-momentum of the exchanged particle. However, we have also additional diagrams to the total $e^{+} e^{-} \rightarrow e^{+} e^{-}$process:

which is the spacelike contribution, where $P$ is the four-momentum of the exchanged particle. The total cross section then becomes $\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim\left|\frac{e^{2}}{-Q^{2}}+\frac{e^{2}}{-P^{2}}\right|^{2}$

### 3.2.9 Compton Scattering

Compton scattering is the scattering of a photon against a charged particle egg. an electron.


The corresponding Feynman diagrams are the following:


1) $E_{n}-E_{i}=K+Q+K^{\prime}-(K+P)=Q+\left(K^{\prime}-P\right)$
2) $E_{n}-E_{i}=P^{\prime}+Q+P-(P+K)=Q+\left(P^{\prime}-K\right)$
where K and $\mathrm{K}^{\prime}$ are the energies of the incoming and outgoing photon, respectively, and P and $P^{\prime}$ are the energies of the incoming and outgoing electron, respectively.
Similar to the case of electron-electron scattering $\Rightarrow \frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim \frac{e^{4}}{\left(m_{e}^{2}-Q^{2}\right)^{2}} ; \quad Q^{2}=\left(K^{\prime}-P\right)^{2}=$ $\left(P^{\prime}-K\right)^{2}$

As before there is another contribution to the total cross section, which becomes:


$$
\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim\left|\frac{e^{2}}{m_{e}^{2}-(K+P)^{2}}+\frac{e^{2}}{m_{e}^{2}-\left(K^{\prime}-P\right)^{2}}\right|^{2}
$$

### 3.3 Weak Interaction

As the name indicates, the effects of the weak interactions are very weak and it was also found that its range is very short. Actually Enrico Fermi assumed that the interaction took place in a single point and described the $\beta$-decay with the following diagram.


The Fermi theory was succesful in describing essentially all experimental data at low energies but it gave unacceptable predictions for high energy weak interactions. For example the theory predicted that the cross section for neutrino-electron scattering should rise linearly with the energy of the incoming neutrino ( $\sigma \sim E_{\nu}$ ). This was in clear contradiction with observations from cosmic ray experiments.

In order to circumvent this problem and to get a description of the weak interaction similar to that of the electromagnetic force it was necessary to give up the four-fermion point like interaction and replace it with a particle exchange mechanism. The force mediating particle has to be very massive to be compatible with the short range of the force. They have to come in three varieties of two charged mediators, the $W^{+}$and $W^{-}$particles and one neutral, the $Z^{o}$ particle. Consider a particle $A$ at rest emitting a force mediator $X$.


The initial state: $\quad p_{A}=\left(m_{A}, 0\right)$
The final state: $p_{A}^{\prime}=\left(E_{A}^{\prime}, \bar{p}_{A}^{\prime}\right), \quad E_{A}^{\prime 2}={\bar{p}^{\prime}}_{A}^{2}+m_{A}^{2}$
$p_{X}=\left(E_{X}, \bar{p}_{X}\right), E_{X}^{2}=\bar{p}_{X}^{2}+m_{X}^{2}$
but $\bar{p}_{A}^{\prime}=-\bar{p}_{X} \quad$ (momentum conservation)
$\Delta E=E_{n}-E_{i}=E_{A}^{\prime}+E_{X}-m_{A}$
If $\left|\bar{p}_{A}^{\prime}\right|=\left|\bar{p}_{X}\right| \rightarrow 0 \Rightarrow E_{A}^{\prime} \approx m_{A}$ and $E_{X} \approx m_{X}$
$\Rightarrow \Delta E \rightarrow m_{X}$
Heisenberg: $\quad \Delta t \sim \frac{\hbar}{\Delta E}$
but $\Delta t=R / c$ where $R$ is the range of $X$.
$\Rightarrow R \approx \frac{\hbar c}{m_{X}}$
The coupling of the $W$ and $Z$ particles to quarks and leptons would give the amplitude:

$$
\frac{g_{w}^{2}}{-q^{2}+M_{W, Z}^{2}} \quad \text { cf. } \quad \frac{e^{2}}{-q^{2}} \quad \text { for e.m. interaction. }
$$

where $g_{w}$ can be regarded as the weak charge, defined as $g_{w}=\sqrt{4 \pi \alpha_{w}}$, where $\alpha_{w}$ is the weak coupling strength (equivalently to the definition of $g_{e}$ as the fundamental unit of electric charge).
At low $q^{2}\left(q^{2} \ll M_{W, Z}^{2}\right)$ the amplitude is independent of $q^{2}$ and the Fermi description is valid. The Fermi coupling constant is
$\frac{G_{F}}{(\hbar c)^{3}}=\frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}\left(\frac{g_{w}}{M_{W} c^{2}}\right)^{2}=1.166 \cdot 10^{-5} \mathrm{GeV}^{-2} \quad$ determined from the rate of $\beta$-decays.
At the mass of the $W$ and $Z$ the coupling $g_{w}$ to leptons and quarks should be the same as that of the photon $\Rightarrow g_{w}=e$, due to the unification (some numerical factors have been omitted).
$\Rightarrow \quad M_{W, Z} \sim \frac{e}{\sqrt{G_{F}}} \sim 80 \mathrm{GeV}$
A mass of $m_{X}=80 \mathrm{GeV} \Rightarrow R=\frac{200 \mathrm{MeV} \cdot \mathrm{fm}}{80 \cdot 10^{3} \mathrm{MeV}} \approx 2.5 \cdot 10^{-3} \mathrm{fm}$
which is a typical range of the weak interaction.
The weak interaction is thus mediatied by massive weak vector bosons, the $W^{ \pm}$and $Z^{o}$ particles, which couple to both quarks and leptons. There is a strong similarity between the Feynman diagrams for electromagnetic interactions mediated by photon exchange and weak interactions mediated by the weak vector bosons. However, by emitting or absorbing a $W$-boson a quark with charge $+2 / 3$ will be converted into a quark with charge $-1 / 3$, or vise versa. Also the leptons can be converted from a -1 charge state into a zero charge state, or oppositely. Reactions where a $W^{ \pm}$-boson is exchanged are called charged current processes.

By convention the weak propagators are drawn as broken lines in the Feynman diagrams, for example:


The diagrams above illustrate transitions within the same family.

$$
\binom{u}{d} \text { and }\binom{\nu_{e}}{e^{-}}
$$

The most well-known weak decay, which illustrates the transitions inside the same generation, is the neutron decay ( $\beta$-decay): $n \rightarrow p+e^{-}+\bar{\nu}_{e}$.

On the quark level it corresponds to the conversion of a $d$-quark into a $u$-quark.
$u d d \rightarrow u u d+e^{-}+\bar{\nu}_{e}$


### 3.3.1 Some Other Examples of Weak Decays

$K^{o}$-decay:

$\Lambda^{o}$-decay:


Muon decay:


Pion decay:


### 3.3.2 Properties of the Weak Force Mediators

The emission or absorption of a W-boson transfers a charged lepton into a neutrino or vise versa depending on the charge of the W-boson. It can also convert an up-type quark into a down-type or the other way around as summarized in the table below.

|  | absorption | emission |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $e^{-} \rightarrow \nu_{e}$ | $W^{+}$ | $W^{-}$ |
| $\nu_{e} \rightarrow e^{-}$ | $W^{-}$ | $W^{+}$ |
| $u \rightarrow d$ | $W^{-}$ | $W^{+}$ |
| $d \rightarrow u$ | $W^{+}$ | $W^{-}$ |

Weak interactions take place between all quarks and leptons. By convention the weak coupling strength (or the weak charge) of $W^{ \pm}$is set to $\frac{g}{\sqrt{2}}$ (for simplicity we use $g=g_{w}$ in the following). Similar to QED where the electromagnetic coupling strength $-e$ gives the probability that an electron will emit a photon does the weak coupling strength give the probability for a neutrino to emit a $W^{+}$-boson and become an electron. The weak coupling strength of $W^{+}$and $W^{-}$is the same for all leptons and quarks.


If a neutrino should be able to remain a neutrino in weak interaction and not always be converted into a charged lepton a neutral weak boson would be needed, and the reaction would then accordingly be called neutral current interaction. In 1973 such processes were observed in bubble chamber experiments.
$\nu_{\mu}+N \rightarrow \nu_{\mu}+X$
$\bar{\nu}_{\mu}+N \rightarrow \bar{\nu}_{\mu}+X$
where $N$ is a nucleon and $X$ is one or more final state particles.


The relative strength of the $Z^{o}$-coupling compared to the $W$-coupling can be estimated by comparing the occurance of neutral and charged current processes. The neutral current reactions turned out to occur on a rate which is in the same order as the charged current processes. This holds for both particles and anti-particles.

$$
\nu_{\mu}+N \rightarrow \mu^{-}+X
$$



$$
\frac{\sigma\left(\nu_{\mu}+N \rightarrow \nu_{\mu}+X\right)}{\sigma\left(\nu_{\mu}+N \rightarrow \mu^{-}+X\right)}=0.31 \pm 0.01
$$

$$
\bar{\nu}_{\mu}+N \rightarrow \mu^{+}+X
$$



$$
\frac{\sigma\left(\bar{\nu}_{\mu}+N \rightarrow \bar{\nu}_{\mu}+X\right)}{\sigma\left(\bar{\nu}_{\mu}+N \rightarrow \mu^{+}+X\right)}=0.38 \pm 0.02
$$

In 1983 the weak bosons were directly observed in collisions between protons and antiprotons at CERN. The particle beams had energies of 270 GeV each, which corresponds to a center-ofmass energy of $\sqrt{s}=2 E=540 G e V$. It should, however, be kept in mind that the effective collision is between a quark and an antiquark, which only carry a fraction of the proton momentum. Some examples of weak processes in $p \bar{p}$ collisions are shown below.




### 3.3.3 The Electroweak Theory of Weinberg and Salam

The starting point of the electroweak theory was to introduce three massless particles, $W^{+}, W^{-}$ and $W^{o}$. However, the measured probability of neutral current processes did not agree with what was expected from theoretical calculations assuming the neutral partner $W^{o}$ to the charged $W$ bosons. In order to solve this problem it was assumed that another field, the B-field, exists with a field particle called B. All leptons have the same probability to emit or absorb a B-particle. The couplings to $W$ and $B$ are proportional to $g$ and $g^{\prime}$, respectively.
Thus we have the following field particles: $\quad W^{o}, W^{+}, W^{-}$and $B$, with the coupling strengths:
$W^{o}$ to $e$
$W^{o}$ to $\nu$
$B$ to $\nu, e$
$\quad \frac{g}{\sqrt{2}}$
$-\frac{g}{2}$
$\frac{g}{2}$
$-\frac{g^{\prime}}{2}$

We realized earlier that an electron may emit and reabsorb photons continously such that the electron at each moment is surrounded by a cloud of photons. In the same way an electron may emit and absorb both $W^{o}$ and $B$ particles, but since it is impossible to separate the two, the interaction is given as the exchange of a mixture of the $W^{o}$ and $B$ particles. All interactions which invole a $W^{o}$ exchange also involve a $B$ exchange. Let us consider the representation of a vector in two coordinate systems which are rotated with respect to each other.


If we identify the x component with the $B$-particle and the y component with the $W^{o}$-particle, these particles will exist in combinations given by x' and y', respectively. In the WeinbergSalam theory it is assumed that the $W^{o}$ and $B$ particles are massless but via the so called Higgsmechanism one combination of $W^{o}$ and $B$ will get mass, corresponding to the $Z^{o}$ particle, whereas the other combination will remain massless, identical to the photon.
$\gamma=\sin \theta_{W} \cdot W^{o}+\cos \theta_{W} \cdot B$
$Z^{o}=\cos \theta_{W} \cdot W^{o}-\sin \theta_{W} \cdot B$
The sinus and cosinus of the weak mixing angle (or the Weinberg angle) $\theta_{W}$ define the mixing ratio since $\sin ^{2} \theta_{W}+\cos ^{2} \theta_{W}=1$.

Using (I)-(VI) gives
$\nu$ to $\gamma$ coupling: $\quad \frac{1}{2}\left(g \sin \theta_{W}-g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}\right)$
$\nu$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling: $\quad \frac{1}{2}\left(g \cos \theta_{W}+g^{\prime} \sin \theta_{W}\right)$
$e$ to $\gamma$ coupling: $\quad \frac{1}{2}\left(-g \sin \theta_{W}-g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}\right)$
$e$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling: $\quad \frac{1}{2}\left(-g \cos \theta_{W}+g^{\prime} \sin \theta_{W}\right)$

1) but a neutrino does not couple to a photon $\Rightarrow$ the coupling $=0$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{1}{2}\left(g \sin \theta_{W}-g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}\right)=0 \\
& \Rightarrow g \sin \theta_{W}=g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\frac{g^{\prime}}{g}=\frac{\sin \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}=\tan \theta_{W}
$$

2) The strength of the $e$ to $\gamma$ coupling is -e
$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{1}{2}\left(-g \sin \theta_{W}-g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}\right)=-e$
$\Rightarrow e=\frac{1}{2}\left(g \sin \theta_{W}+g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}\right)$
but since $g \sin \theta_{W}=g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}$ we get:
$e=g \sin \theta_{W}=g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}$
$\Rightarrow \quad g=\frac{e}{\sin \theta_{W}}$ and $g^{\prime}=\frac{e}{\cos \theta_{W}}$
3) Insertion into the expression for the $\nu$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling gives:

$$
\frac{1}{2}\left(g \cos \theta_{W}+g^{\prime} \sin \theta_{W}\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{e}{\sin \theta_{W}} \cdot \cos \theta_{W}+\frac{e}{\cos \theta_{W}} \cdot \sin \theta_{W}\right)=\frac{e}{2}\left(\cot \theta_{W}+\tan \theta_{W}\right)
$$

4) and for the $e$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling we get:

$$
\frac{1}{2}\left(-g \cos \theta_{W}+g^{\prime} \sin \theta_{W}\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left(-\frac{e}{\sin \theta_{W}} \cdot \cos \theta_{W}+\frac{e}{\cos \theta_{W}} \cdot \sin \theta_{W}\right)=\frac{e}{2}\left(-\cot \theta_{W}+\tan \theta_{W}\right)
$$

5) The $W^{ \pm}$coupling is $\frac{g}{\sqrt{2}}$
but since $g \sin \theta_{W}=e \Rightarrow \frac{g}{\sqrt{2}} \sin \theta_{W}=\frac{e}{\sqrt{2}}$ we get for the $W^{ \pm}$coupling:
$\frac{g}{\sqrt{2}}=\frac{e}{\sqrt{2} \sin \theta_{W}}$

### 3.3.4 The Higgs Mechanism

The theory is only consistent if the weak bosons are assumed to be massless. However, experimental results show that $W^{ \pm}$and $Z^{o}$ are massive whereas the photon is massless. In order to solve this problem the Higgs mechanism has been introduced.

Consider a photon that travels in a gas of some density. The speed of this photon is given by $v=c / n$ where $c$ is the speed of light in vacuum and $n$ is the refractive index of the gas. Thus, if $n$ is greater than unity the photon travels slower than in vacuum. This can be understood by the fact that the photons continuously are absorbed and reemitted by the electrons of the gas. This is slowing down the velocity of the photons and gives the impression that they move like particles with mass would do in vaccum.


In order to illustrate how the $W$ and $Z$ particles get their masses we may in analogy with the case of the photon assume that vacuum contains some 'weak' medium consisting of spinless neutrino-like particles $N$, electronlike particles $E$, and their antiparticles $\bar{N}$ and $\bar{E}$. When a $W^{-}$particle moves through this medium it might be absorbed by a spinless $N$ particle. The $N$ particle then converts into spinless electron-like particles $E$, which after a while reemits a $W^{-}$ and is reconverted into an $N$ according to:


The corresponding diagram for a $W^{+}$is shown below.


The originally massless $W^{ \pm}$particles get their masses through the interaction with the 'weak' medium such that the mass is related to the probability for being absorbed and the number of absorbing particles in the medium. The coupling $W^{ \pm}$to $N$ is $g_{W}=\frac{g}{\sqrt{2}}$ (in analogy with the $W^{ \pm}$to $\nu$ coupling) and if we assume that $\kappa$ is a constant related to the density of $N$ particles we get:
$m_{W^{ \pm}}^{2}=\kappa \cdot \frac{g^{2}}{2}$
Also the $W^{o}$ and $B$ particles may be absorbed by the $N$ particles, which will remain an $N$ particle before it reemits a $W^{o}$ or $B$. At this point the $N$ particle will not remember by which kind of particle it was absorbed and the probability for sending out a $W^{o}$ or $B$ is given by the coupling strength.


$$
\begin{array}{lll}
B N & (B \nu): & -\frac{g^{\prime}}{2} \\
W^{o} N & \left(W^{o} \nu\right): & \frac{g}{2}
\end{array}
$$

The emissions are therefore in a mixture, which are related to the coupling strengths according to:
$\frac{g}{2} \cdot W^{o}-\frac{g^{\prime}}{2} \cdot B$
but $g \sin \theta_{W}=g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}$
$\Rightarrow g^{2}=g^{2}\left(\sin ^{2} \theta_{W}+\cos ^{2} \theta_{W}\right)=g^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta_{W}+g^{2} \cos ^{2} \theta_{W}=g^{\prime 2} \cos ^{2} \theta_{W}+g^{2} \cos ^{2} \theta_{W}=$
$=\cos ^{2} \theta_{W}\left(g^{\prime 2}+g^{2}\right)$
$\Rightarrow g=\sqrt{g^{2}+g^{\prime 2}} \cdot \cos \theta_{W}$
In the same way we get: $g^{\prime}=\sqrt{g^{2}+g^{\prime 2}} \cdot \sin \theta_{W}$
$\Rightarrow \frac{g}{2} \cdot W^{o}-\frac{g^{\prime}}{2} \cdot B=\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{g^{2}+g^{\prime 2}}\left(\cos \theta_{W} \cdot W^{o}-\sin \theta_{W} \cdot B\right)=$
$=\frac{\sqrt{g^{2}+g^{\prime 2}}}{2} \cdot Z^{o}$
Thus, independent of whether a $W^{o}$ or a $B$ particle was absorbed the emitted state is a mixed state which corresponds to the $Z^{o}$ particle. This is even true if the absorbed is not a a pure $W^{o}$ or $B$ but a mixture of them, like the $Z^{o}$ particle. So an incoming $Z^{o}$ particle will be absorbed by an $N$ or an $\bar{N}$ and reemitted in a similar way as the $W^{ \pm}$particles, according to the following diagrams.


The coupling of the $Z^{o}$ particle to the $N(\bar{N})$ particles is the same as the coupling to $\nu(\bar{\nu})$.
With $Z^{o}=W^{o} \cos \theta_{W}-B \sin \theta_{W}$
and

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
B N & (B \nu): & -\frac{g^{\prime}}{2} \\
W^{o} N & \left(W^{o} \nu\right): & \frac{g}{2}
\end{array}
$$

the coupling of the $Z^{o}$ particle to the $N(\bar{N})$ particles is given by:
$\frac{g}{2} \cos \theta_{W}+\frac{g^{\prime}}{2} \sin \theta_{W}=$
$=\frac{1}{2}\left(g \cos \theta_{W}+g^{\prime} \sin \theta_{W}\right)$, which is the same as the $Z^{o}$ to $\nu$ coupling.

The mass of the $Z^{o}$ particle is related to the probability for absorption in the same way as for the $W$ particles. However, since the $Z^{o}$ particle can also couple to $\bar{N}$ particles we get an additional factor 2 .
$\Rightarrow m_{Z^{o}}^{2}=\frac{2 \kappa}{4}\left(g \cos \theta_{W}+g^{\prime} \sin \theta_{W}\right)^{2}=$
$=\frac{\kappa}{2}\left(g \cos \theta_{W}+g \frac{\sin \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}} \sin \theta_{W}\right)^{2}$, since $g^{\prime}=g \cdot \frac{\sin \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}$
$\Rightarrow m_{Z^{o}}^{2}=\frac{\kappa}{2}\left[\frac{g}{\cos \theta_{W}}\left(\cos ^{2} \theta_{W}+\sin ^{2} \theta_{W}\right)\right]^{2}$
$\Rightarrow m_{Z^{o}}^{2}=\frac{\kappa}{2} \cdot \frac{g^{2}}{\cos ^{2} \theta_{W}}$
From above we have $m_{W}^{2}=\kappa \frac{g^{2}}{2} \Rightarrow \kappa=\frac{2 m_{W}^{2}}{g^{2}}$
$\Rightarrow \quad m_{Z^{o}}^{2}=\frac{2 m_{W}^{2}}{2 g^{2}} \cdot \frac{g^{2}}{\cos ^{2} \theta_{W}}=\frac{m_{W}^{2}}{\cos ^{2} \theta_{W}}$
$\Rightarrow m_{Z^{o}}=\frac{m_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}$
We have already used the relation between the Fermi coupling and the mass of the $W$-particle in order to estimate the mass of the $W$ particle.
$m_{W} \sim \frac{g_{w}}{\sqrt{G_{F}}}, \quad g_{w}=\frac{g}{\sqrt{2}}=\frac{e}{\sqrt{2} \sin \theta_{W}}$
If we introduce the numerical constants we get:
$\Rightarrow m_{W}=\sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{2} e^{2}(\hbar c)^{3}}{8 G_{F} \sin ^{2} \theta_{W}}}=\frac{37.4}{\sin ^{2} \theta_{W}}$
If we insert the value of $m_{W}=80 \mathrm{GeV}$, we get $\theta_{W} \approx 28^{\circ}$
This is consistent with the experimental value $\theta_{W} \approx 29^{\circ}$
$\sin \theta_{W}=0.485$
$\cos \theta_{W}=0.875$
$\tan \theta_{W}=0.55$
If we now introduce the value of $m_{W}=80 \mathrm{GeV}$ and $\theta_{W}=29^{\circ}$ we get $m_{Z^{o}}=91 \mathrm{GeV}$, which agrees with the experimentally measured value of the $Z^{o}$ mass..

The photon can not couple to the $N(\bar{N})$ particles consistent with the fact that they don't couple to neutrino particles. It means that the contributions from the $W^{o}$ and $B$ particles in the photon mixture compensate each other completely and the photon will not be absorbed by the $N$ particles.

With $\gamma=W^{o} \sin \theta_{W}+B \cos \theta_{W}$
and

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
B N & (B \nu): & -\frac{g^{\prime}}{2} \\
W^{o} N & \left(W^{o} \nu\right): & \frac{g}{2}
\end{array}
$$

the coupling of the $\gamma$ particle to the $N(\bar{N})$ particles is given by:
$\frac{g}{2} \sin \theta_{W}-\frac{g^{\prime}}{2} \cos \theta_{W}=\frac{g}{2}\left(\sin \theta_{W}-\frac{\sin \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}} \cos \theta_{W}\right)=0 \quad$ since $\quad g^{\prime}=g \frac{\sin \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}$

Thus, the photons can move freely through the 'weak' medium with the speed of light which corresponds to zero mass.

However, no $N$ or $E$ particles have been observed. The solution to this problem can be found in an analogy with the properties of the photon. In vacuum a photon can have two polarization states which can be represented with two polarization vectors transverse to the direction of motion. If we have a medium containing electrons and protons also longitudinal wave motions are created, caused by the mutual movements of the electrons and protons. These movements corresponds to fluctuations in time of the charge density $\rho^{+}-\rho^{-}$, where $\rho^{+}$and $\rho^{-}$are the densities of positive and negative charges, respectively. Variations in the total density of particles, $\rho^{+}+\rho^{-}$create pressure waves, also called phonons.

If an electron travels through this medium it will cause a disturbance of the the charge structure and create waves in the densities $\rho^{+}-\rho^{-}$and $\rho^{+}+\rho^{-}$, which propagate through the medium independently of each other and with different velocities.
$\Rightarrow$ The $\rho^{+}-\rho^{-}$wave motion corresponds to longitudinal electromagnetic oscillations and can be identified with a longitudinally polarized photon.
$\Rightarrow$ Photons with mass (virtual photons) can be longitudinally polarized.
$\Rightarrow$ The $\rho^{+}+\rho^{-}$wave motion can be identified with phonons.
The 'weak' medium contains four components $N, \bar{N}, E$ and $\bar{E}$. The density variation of three of these combinations correspond to longitudinal polarization states of $W^{+}, W^{-}$and $Z^{o}$. Variations of the fourth combination correspond to variations in the total density of all four components. These create pressure waves in the weak medium, which can be identified with the Higgs particle.

Since $W^{ \pm}$and $Z^{o}$ are massive particles they can be longitudinally polarized.
Degrees of freedom:

1) In the electroweak theory

2) Experimentally


The remaining degree of freedom corresponds to the Higgs particle.
Also other particles like quarks and leptons get their masses through the Higgs mechanism.

### 3.3.5 Electroweak Interaction With Quarks

$W$-particles $\left(W^{+}, W^{-}\right.$and $\left.W^{o}\right)$ couple in the same way to left-handed quarks and leptons or their right-handed antiparticles. All couplings of the $W$-particles to right-handed particles or left-handed antiparticles are zero.

| $W^{ \pm}$to quarks $=$ | $W^{ \pm}$to leptons | $\frac{g}{\sqrt{2}}$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $W^{o}$ to $u, c, t$ | $=$ | $W^{o}$ to $\nu^{\prime} s$ | $\frac{g}{2}$ |
| $W^{o}$ to $d, s, b=$ | $W^{o}$ to $e, \mu, \tau$ | $-\frac{g}{2}$ |  |
|  |  | $B$ to leptons | $-\frac{g^{\prime}}{2}$ |
| $B$ to quarks |  | $\frac{g^{\prime}}{6}$ |  |

## Couplings to left-handed particles (right-handed antiparticles)

$u_{L}$ to $\gamma$ coupling

$\gamma=W^{o} \sin \theta_{W}+B \cos \theta_{W} \quad \Rightarrow \quad u_{L}$ to $\gamma$ coupling: $\frac{g}{2} \sin \theta_{W}+\frac{g^{\prime}}{6} \cos \theta_{W}$
but $g=\frac{e}{\sin \theta_{W}}$ and $g^{\prime}=\frac{e}{\cos \theta_{W}}$
$\Rightarrow \gamma$ to $u_{L}$ coupling: $\quad e\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{6}\right)=e \cdot \frac{2}{3}$
$d_{L}$ to $\gamma$ coupling

$\gamma=W^{o} \sin \theta_{W}+B \cos \theta_{W} \quad \Rightarrow \quad d_{L}$ to $\gamma$ coupling: $\quad-\frac{g}{2} \sin \theta_{W}+\frac{g^{\prime}}{6} \cos \theta_{W}$ $=e\left(-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{6}\right)=e \cdot-\frac{1}{3}$
$u_{L}$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling

$Z^{o}=W^{o} \cos \theta_{W}-B \sin \theta_{W} \quad \Rightarrow \quad u_{L}$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling: $\frac{g}{2} \cos \theta_{W}-\frac{g^{\prime}}{6} \sin \theta_{W}$
$=\frac{e}{2}\left(\frac{\cos \theta_{W}}{\sin \theta_{W}}-\frac{1}{3} \frac{\sin \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}\right)=-\frac{e}{2}\left(\frac{1}{3} \tan \theta_{W}-\cot \theta_{W}\right)$
$d_{L}$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling

$Z^{o}=W^{o} \cos \theta_{W}-B \sin \theta_{W} \quad \Rightarrow \quad d_{L}$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling: $\quad-\frac{g}{2} \cos \theta_{W}-\frac{g^{\prime}}{6} \sin \theta_{W}$
$=-\frac{e}{2}\left(\frac{\cos \theta_{W}}{\sin \theta_{W}}+\frac{1}{3} \frac{\sin \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}\right)=-\frac{e}{2}\left(\frac{1}{3} \tan \theta_{W}+\cot \theta_{W}\right)$

## Coupling to right handed particles (left-handed antiparticles)

No right-handed $\nu$ 's exist.

| $W^{ \pm}, W^{o}$ to $q_{R}$ | $=$ | $W^{ \pm}, W^{o}$ to $l_{R}$ | 0 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | $B$ to $l_{R}$ | $-g^{\prime}$ |
| $B$ to $u_{R}, c_{R}, t_{R}$ |  | $\frac{2}{3} g^{\prime}$ |  |
| $B$ to $d_{R}, s_{R}, b_{R}$ |  |  | $-\frac{1}{3} g^{\prime}$ |

$\gamma=B \cos \theta_{W}$
$Z^{o}=-B \sin \theta_{W}$
$l_{R}$ to $\gamma$ coupling

$\gamma=B \cos \theta_{W} \quad \Rightarrow \quad l_{R}$ to $\gamma$ coupling: $\quad-g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}$
but $g^{\prime}=\frac{e}{\cos \theta_{W}}$
$\Rightarrow \quad \gamma$ to $l_{R}$ coupling: $-e$
$l_{R}$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling

$Z^{o}=-B \sin \theta_{W} \quad \Rightarrow \quad l_{R}$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling: $\quad g^{\prime} \sin \theta_{W}=e \frac{\sin \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}=e \tan \theta_{W}$
$u_{R}$ to $\gamma$ coupling
$\gamma=B \cos \theta_{W} \quad \Rightarrow \quad u_{R}$ to $\gamma$ coupling: $2 / 3 g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}=\frac{2 e}{3} \frac{\cos \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}=\frac{2 e}{3}$
$u_{R}$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling
$Z^{o}=-B \sin \theta_{W} \quad \Rightarrow \quad u_{R}$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling: $\quad-\frac{2}{3} g^{\prime} \sin \theta_{W}=-\frac{2 e}{3} \frac{\sin \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}=-\frac{2 e}{3} \tan \theta_{W}$
$d_{R}$ to $\gamma$ coupling
$\gamma=B \cos \theta_{W} \quad \Rightarrow \quad d_{R}$ to $\gamma$ coupling: $\quad-1 / 3 g^{\prime} \cos \theta_{W}=-\frac{1}{3} e \frac{\cos \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}=-\frac{1}{3} e$
$d_{R}$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling
$Z^{o}=-B \sin \theta_{W} \quad \Rightarrow d_{R}$ to $Z^{o}$ coupling: $\quad-\left(-\frac{1}{3} g^{\prime} \sin \theta_{W}\right)=\frac{1}{3} e \frac{\sin \theta_{W}}{\cos \theta_{W}}=\frac{1}{3} e \tan \theta_{W}$

### 3.3.6 Quark Mixing

We have seen that the emission or absorption of a charged W-boson will change the flavour of a quark. For example a $d$-quark is converted into a $u$-quark in the $\beta$-decay. The s-quark was introduced to explain the observation of so called ' V '-particles.

$$
\begin{gathered}
\binom{\nu_{e}}{e^{-}}\binom{\nu_{\mu}}{\mu^{-}} \\
\binom{u}{d}\binom{s}{s}
\end{gathered}
$$

The 'V'-particles were later identified as the decays of the $K^{o}$ and $\Lambda^{o}$ particles in the decay modes:
$K^{o} \rightarrow \pi^{+}+\pi^{-}$
$\Lambda^{o} \rightarrow \pi^{-}+p$
where $K^{o}$ contains an $\bar{s}$-quark and $\Lambda^{o}$ an $s$-quark, whereas the final state particles, the proton and the pions, do not carry any strangeness. This means that an $s(\bar{s})$-quark has been converted into a $u(\bar{u})$-quark by the emission of a $W^{-}\left(W^{+}\right)$. Thus, transitions are not only possible within a specific quark family but also between the families.


Instead of introducing new couplings to accomodate such decays, a modification of the quark doublets were made. It was assumed that the charged $W$ 's couple to a mixture of quark states ('rotated' quark states). Compare to the representation of a vector in two coordinate systems that are rotated with respect to each other.


$$
\begin{aligned}
& x^{\prime}=x \cos \theta+y \sin \theta \\
& y^{\prime}=y \cos \theta-x \sin \theta
\end{aligned}
$$

Assume that $x$ and $y$ represent the flavour eigenstates $d$ and $s$, respectively, whereas $x^{\prime}$ and $y^{\prime}$ correspond to mixed states $d^{\prime}$ and $s^{\prime}$. Then we get:
$d^{\prime}=d \cos \theta_{C}+s \sin \theta_{C}$
$s^{\prime}=-d \sin \theta_{C}+s \cos \theta_{C}$
where $\theta_{C}$ is called the quark mixing angle or the Cabibbo angle. The mixing angle is not given by the theory but has to be determined by experiments.

The fact that only the charge $-1 / 3$ quarks occur in mixed states and not the charge $+2 / 3$ quarks is just by convention.

We now have a so called 'Cabibbo favoured' transition, with the coupling strength $g_{W} \cos \theta_{C}$ (where $g_{W}=g / \sqrt{2}$ ), and a 'Cabibbo unfavoured' transition, whith the coupling strength $g_{W} \sin \theta_{C}$.



Thus, the transition $W^{+} \rightarrow u \bar{d}^{\prime}$ can be interpreted as a sum of the transitions $W^{+} \rightarrow u \bar{d}$ and $W^{+} \rightarrow u \bar{s}$.


In the same way the transition $W^{-} \rightarrow \bar{u} d^{\prime}$ can be interpreted as a sum of the transitions $W^{-} \rightarrow$ $\bar{u} d$ and $W^{-} \rightarrow \bar{u} s$. Transitions that change flavour but not charge are not allowed.

The determination of the Cabibbo angle can be done by measuring the ratio between $\Delta S=1$ and $\Delta S=0$ decays, where $\Delta S$ is the difference in strangeness of the initial and final state.
$\frac{\Gamma\left(K^{+} \rightarrow \mu^{+}+\nu_{\mu}\right)}{\Gamma\left(\pi^{+} \rightarrow \mu^{+}+\nu_{\mu}\right)} \sim \sin ^{2} \theta_{C} / \cos ^{2} \theta_{C}$
The experimental results show that the $\Delta S=1$ transition is suppressed by a factor of about 20 compared to the $\Delta S=0$ transition. This corresponds to a mixing angle $\theta_{C}=13^{\circ}$.

### 3.3.7 The Prediction of the Charm Quark

Although there were no difficulties to produce the decay $K^{+} \rightarrow \mu^{+}+\nu_{\mu}$

it took a long time before the decay of a neutral $K$-meson into a $\mu^{+} \mu^{-}$pair was observed. This decay can not proceed via an annihilation diagram like:


The reason is that transitions between d-type quarks or u-type quarks, respectively, through the emission of a $Z^{o}$ particle, are not allowed or equivalently the emission of a $Z^{o}$ particle can not change the flavour of a quark. Instead this decay has to occur via a box diagram according to:


The amplitude of this diagram is proportional to $\sin \theta_{C} \cos \theta_{C}$ and should therefore not be strongly suppressed compared to the charged kaon decay, in contradiction with experimental measurements. A solution to this problem was provided by introducing a fourth quark, called the 'charm' quark or the $c$-quark, with charge $+2 / 3$. The $c$-quark couples to the $d$ - and $s$-quarks with a strength that is proportional to $\cos \theta$ and $-\sin \theta$, respectively, as illustrated in the figure below.



Thus, with the $c$-quark the neutral kaon decay should also be possible through:


The amplitude of this diagram is proportional to $-\sin \theta_{C} \cos \theta_{C}$ such that the amplitudes for the two possible decay mechanisms of $K^{o}$ would cancel exactly if the masses of the $u$ - and $c$-quarks were the same. This is, however, not the case. The mass of the $c$-quark could be constrained by the experimentally measured decay rate of $K^{o} \rightarrow \mu^{+} \mu^{-}$.

With four quarks we now have two complete generations:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \binom{u}{d^{\prime}}\binom{c}{s^{\prime}} \underset{\text { or }}{\binom{u}{d \cos \theta_{c^{2}}+\sin \theta_{c}}\binom{c}{\operatorname{scos} \theta_{c^{-}} d \sin \theta_{c}}} \\
& \binom{v_{e}}{e^{-}}\binom{v_{\mu}}{\mu^{-}} \quad\binom{v_{e}}{e^{-}} \quad\binom{\mu_{\mu}}{\mu^{-}}
\end{aligned}
$$

cross transitions between leptons would violate the lepton number conservation.
The relation between the flavour eigenstates and the physical states is given by the Cabibbo mixing matrix:

$$
\binom{d^{\prime}}{s^{\prime}}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
V_{\mathrm{ud}} & \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{us}} \\
V_{\mathrm{cd}} & V_{\mathrm{cs}}
\end{array}\right)\binom{d}{\mathrm{~s}}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\cos \theta_{\mathrm{c}} & \sin \theta_{\mathrm{c}} \\
-\sin \theta_{\mathrm{c}} & \cos \theta_{\mathrm{c}}
\end{array}\right)\binom{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~s}}
$$

We now have the following 'Cabibbo favoured' transitions:


and the following 'Cabibbo unfavoured' transitions:





The introduction of the c-quark means that the multiplets have to be extended to include another dimension as shown below:

(b)


(b)


### 3.4 Experimental Discoveries of Particles

### 3.4.1 Resonance Particles

The particles which were discovered by the early experiments, are either stable or have lifetimes, which are sufficient for them to leave tracks in a detector. Typical lifetimes of such particles are greater than $10^{-12}$ seconds. This of course does not exclude that there might exist particles with significantly shorter lifetimes, such that they would decay into more longlived particles so quickly that they would not be detected directly. The only way to prove their existence is through their decay products. Such transient particles are called resonance particles.

Two types of experiments can be performed in order to search for resonance particles. One possibility is to calculate the invarinat mass (the four-vector sum) of decay particles and investigate if a peak is observed in the invariant mass spectrum. The invariant mass distribution of uncorrelated final state particles will lead to an essentially flat distribution and only for particles originating from a decay, a peak will appear. This method has the disadvantage that normally only one specific decay mode is investigated while other possible decays are neglected. The other method is to measure the cross section of particle interactions as a function of the collisions energy and look for dramatic variations in the cross section. In this view, the presence of resonance particles adds to the cross section of the particles involved in the collision, making the collisions more likely. The reason why this leads to a peak in the cross section and not just to a plateau is that in the vicinity of the resonance peak the interaction of the quarks, building up the resonance particle, plays an important role, whereas at higher energies these quarks can be treated as free particles.

In spite of the fact that resonance particles have extremely short lifetimes, they are just as real as other particles, that can be directly observed in a detector. Typically, the lifetimes of resonance particles are $10^{-23}$ seconds and they can consequently only travel a distance $10^{-15}$ meter at the speed of light. The actual lifetime of a resonance particle can be extracted in a fairly uncomplicated way. According to the Heisenberg uncertainty principle $\Delta t=\hbar / \Delta E$, where $\Delta t$ is the time interval over which the particle exists and $\Delta E$ represents the width of the resonance peak at half the maximum. Thus, a longlived particle will create a narrow resonance peak whereas a shortlived particle will give rise to a broad peak.

### 3.4.2 Significance

When we claim that we have made a significant observation we in general mean that the probability for the selected hypothesis is significantly higher than any other hypothesis. Furthermore, we normally assume that the statistical sample, on which the observation is made, is large enough so that additional observations will not change the conclusion. In particle physics the latter requirement is not always fulfilled. Especially this is so in the search for rare particles, where the claim for an observation in some cases is based on a limited number of events.

Searches for new particle states in particle physics experiment are based on the observation of a class of events fulfilling specific criteria for being signal events, and an estimate of events
coming from various background sources. The probability, $P$, for an observed excess of events to be the expected particle is given by the Poisson probability:

$$
P\left(N_{0}, N_{B}\right)=\frac{e^{-N_{B} \cdot N_{B}^{N_{0}}}}{N_{0}!},
$$

where $N_{B}$ is the number of expected events in case of no signal i.e. the number of background events, and $N_{0}$ is the total number of events observed in this mass region i.e. the sum of signal and background events. Assuming that the observed signal has a Gaussian mass distribution with its centre at the mass value $\mu$ and a width of $\sigma$, then the mass region which is used to calculate the significance is usually $\pm 2 \sigma$ around $\mu$. The significance of an observed signal is frequently expressed in terms of standard deviations $(\sigma)$. When $N_{B}$ is large the significance of an observation can be well approximated by $N_{S} / \sqrt{N_{B}}$, where $N_{S}=N_{0}-N_{B}$, and $\sqrt{N_{B}}$ is the statistical uncertainty in the measurement. Normally a significance of $5 \sigma$ is required to claim a discovery, which correspond to the probability that the observed signal is due to a statistical fluctuation being smaller than $2.9 \cdot 10^{-7}$. As a comparison we can notice that $2 \sigma$ and $3 \sigma$ correspond to $2.8 \%$ and $0.14 \%$ probability, respectively, that the enhancement would be caused by a statistical fluctuation.

The problem becomes more complicated when the signal is not very outstanding such that the mass and width can not be estimated from a visual inspection, as is the case if the enhancement is spread out over a large mass range due to bad mass resolution of the detector. In such cases the current procedure is to use the so called Sliding-Window method, in which an excess of events is searched for within a narrow mass region, which is moved stepwise over the entire kinematic range. However, some precaution has to be taken in using this method since the value of the significance may depend on the step size by which the Sliding-Window is moved. Thus, for observations of physical signals of unknown location or shape a careful evaluation of the significance is necessary.

### 3.4.3 The Experimental Discovery of Charm

Although the existence of the $c$-quark had been predicted by the above given arguments it was quite a surprise when a narrow resonance with a mass of about 3.1 GeV was observed in two experiments independently. One of the experiments (at the Stanford Linear Accelerator) studied $e^{+}+e^{-} \rightarrow$ hadrons. At the point where the energies of the colliding electron and positron beams add up to the mass of the resonance, the threshold for producing this resonance is reached. Normally one would expect that the resonance, which in this case consists of a bound $c \bar{c}$-state, called the $J / \Psi$ particle, decays into particles which contain charm (e.g. D-mesons) according to:


This is however not possible since the mass of the $D$-meson is 1.86 GeV and therefore it would require a particle with a mass of at least 3.72 GeV to produce this decay, whereas the mass of the $J / \Psi$ is only 3.1 GeV . Instead it decays predominantly via three gluons (the force carriers of the strong force, which in a Feynman diagram usually is represented by a curled line) into hadrons:


In the other experiment (at Brookhaven National Laboratory) a beam of protons was brought to hit a Beryllium target and the detector measured how frequently $e^{+} e^{-}$-pairs were produced. The process is essentially $p+p \rightarrow J / \Psi+X \rightarrow e^{+}+e^{-}+X$ where a quark from one proton annihilate with an antiquark (from the sea) from the other proton and produce a virtual photon which decays into an $e^{+} e^{-}$-pair. In this experiment the resonance peak was observed from reconstructing the invariant mass spectrum of the $e^{+} e^{-}$pair of the final state.


### 3.4.4 Charmed Particles

Since the $J / \Psi$ particle consists of a $c \bar{c}$ pair, the net charm content (charm quantum number) is zero. There are several additional $\bar{c} \bar{c}$ states, which are excited states of the $J / \Psi$ particle. All these states are called charmonium states. As already mentioned in the previous section, particles which contain combinations of charm (anticharm) quark(s) with lighter quark(s) (antiquark(s)) are called charmed particles, since they have a net charm quantum number. The charmed mesons and baryons can be seen in the multiplets shown in section 3.3.7.

An example of a possible decay of a D-meson is: $D^{-} \rightarrow K^{+}+\pi^{-}+\pi^{-}$


The D-mesons predominantly decay into final states with K-mesons since $c \rightarrow s$ is a Cabibbo favoured transition.

### 3.4.5 The Discovery of the tau-lepton

Shortly after the discovery of charm the experiment at SLAC reported the observation of anomalous events with a muon and an electron in the final state and nothing else i.e. $e^{+}+e^{-} \rightarrow$ $e^{ \pm}+\mu^{\mp}$. Since such processes violate lepton number conservation they should not be able to happen. On the other hand, if a new heavy lepton, the $\tau$-lepton, was introduced, the lepton number conservation could be restored and the decay would look like:


The energy threshold needed to produce a $\tau^{+} \tau^{-}$-pair was 3.6 GeV , implying a mass of the $\tau$ lepton of about 1.8 GeV . Due to its large mass it can, in contrast to electrons and muons, also decay into hadrons i.e. the emitted $W$ decays into a quark-antiquark pair.

Further experiments have proven that the $\tau$-lepton, just like the electron and muon, has its own neutrino, $\nu_{\tau}$. With this discovery we had three generations of leptons and only two generations of quarks.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \binom{u}{d^{\prime}}\binom{c}{s^{\prime}} \\
& \binom{\mathrm{e}}{v_{\mathrm{e}}}\binom{\mu}{v_{\mu}}\binom{\tau}{v_{\tau}}
\end{aligned}
$$

### 3.4.6 The Discovery of the $b$-quark

In an experiment at Fermilab, that was similar to the Brookhaven experiment at which $J / \Psi$ was observed, a new resonance state at 9.46 GeV was found in 1977 by measuring the reaction;
$p+N \rightarrow \mu^{+}+\mu^{-}+X$
and calculating the invariant mass spectrum of the $\mu^{+} \mu^{-}$pair. The picture below shows a plot of the invariant mass of muon pairs shown in the announcement of the discovery.


The resonance was assumed to be a bound state of a new quark and its antiquark and was called the $\Upsilon$-particle (upsilon-particle). In the following year several $\Upsilon$ resonance states were found from measurements with much higher precisions in $e^{+} e^{-}$collisions at DESY. By accurately measuring the widths of the resonance peaks for the gound state $(\Upsilon)$ and the first excited state $\left(\Upsilon^{\prime}\right)$, it could be concluded that these resonances must contain a new quark of charge $-1 / 3$. This was called the bottom quark or the $b$-quark with a mass around 4.5 GeV .
The $\Upsilon$-particle has the $b$ quantum number equal to zero since it is a bound $b \bar{b}$ state. The $b$-quark adds another dimension in the quantum number space, extending the multiplets of mesons and baryons. Thus, B-mesons are $\bar{b} q(b \bar{q})$ states, where $q(\bar{q})$ represents a $u$ or $d$ quark. If the $b$ quark is combined with an $s$ or $c$-quark the notation is $B_{s}$ and $B_{c}$, respectively. B-baryons are three-quark states with one or more $b(\bar{b})$ quark(s) and to indicate this the notation is for example $\Lambda_{b}^{o}$.
B-hadrons tend to decay into final states which contain a charmed hadron, since the decay $b \rightarrow c$ is Cabibbo favoured compared to $b \rightarrow u$. However, as seen from the full mixing matrix at the end of section 3.4.7, it is still suppressed compared to the decay $c \rightarrow s$. Therefore the lifetimes of B-hadrons are normally higher than those of charmed particles.

### 3.4.7 The Discovery of the $t$-quark

The discovery of the $b$-quark led to intense searches for its $+\frac{2}{3}$ charge partner, called the top quark or the $t$-quark. The most clear evidence for new bound quark-antiquark states is obtained
from their production in $e^{+} e^{-}$collisions. The procedure is very simple. The production rate of hadronic final states (or/and $e^{+} e^{-} / \mu^{+} \mu^{-}$) is measured at points of continously increasing energies of the colliding beams. As the threshold for production of a new state is reached the counting rate increases drastically and the beam energy is a measure of the mass of the new quark. The collision energy needed for producing such a resonance state is thus twice the mass of the new quark. After having pushed the energies of existing $e^{+} e^{-}$colliders as far as was possible it was clear that the mass of the $t$-quark had to be very large.

The first evidence that the top-quark is very heavy came already in 1987 from the study of Bmesons. It was shown from $e^{+} e^{-}$collisions at DESY that $B^{o}-\bar{B}^{o}$ oscillations might occur. The normal process would be $e^{+}+e^{-} \rightarrow b+\bar{b}$, which would result in a $B^{o}$-meson and a $\bar{B}^{o}$-meson in the final state. However, in some cases the $B^{o}$-meson can oscillate into a $\bar{B}^{o}$-meson or vise versa giving final states of $B^{o} B^{o}$ or $\bar{B}^{o} \bar{B}^{o}$. Oscillations are produced according to the following process:


These oscillations provide basic information on the parameters of the Standard Model, and any deviation from the SM predictions would be an indication for contributions from new physics. The probability for such oscillations can be expressed as the ratio, $r$, between final states with equal type $B$-mesons and opposite type $B$-mesons, given by:
$r=\frac{N\left(B^{o} B^{o}\right)+N\left(\bar{B}^{o} \bar{B}^{o}\right)}{N\left(B^{o} \bar{B}^{o}\right)}=\frac{\chi^{2}}{\chi^{2}+2}$
where: $\quad \chi=\frac{\tau_{B} G_{F}^{2} m_{b}}{6 \pi^{2}} B_{B} f_{B}^{2}\left|V_{t d} V_{t b} *\right|^{2} \mathbf{m}_{\mathbf{t}}^{2} F\left(\frac{m_{t}^{2}}{M_{W}^{2}}\right) \eta_{Q C D}$
It is seen that the oscillation strength depends on a number of parameter but especially it should be noted that it depends on the top quark mass squared. Using the measured value of $r$ and inserting the most accurate determinations of the other parameters, it is found that the mass of the top quark should be larger than 50 GeV .

The fact that electrons lose energy via synchrotron radiation if they are bent makes it difficult to reach very high energies in circular $e^{+} e^{-}$colliders. Protons, which are much heavier, do not suffer from this problem and can therefore be brought to much higher energies than electrons. On the other hand high energy collisions between two protons (or a proton and an antiproton) are essentially collisions between two of the quarks inside the protons. The quarks which do not participate in the collision will, however, also be converted into hadrons and will therefore contribute a very severe background which makes the observation of a resonance state much
more difficult than in the background free events from $e^{+} e^{-}$collisions. Anyhow, since the energy range of $e^{+} e^{-}$colliders was not sufficient, the search had to be performed at the $p \bar{p}$ collider at Fermilab. The main production mechanisms from such collisions are:


The $t$-quark turns out to be so heavy that the typical time to produce a bound quark-antiquark state is much longer than the decay time of a $t$-quark. The consequence of this is that no resonance will be observed but the $t$-quark has to be identified through its decay. Since only $u$ and $d$ quarks are stable the $t$ quark will go through a cascade decay, which below is illustrated by the Cabibbo favoured decay modes in the decay chain:


This makes the observation much more difficult and it also took until 1995 before the evidence for its existence was presented. The top quark turned out to have a mass of about 175 GeV .

The complete pricture of quarks and leptons is now:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \binom{v_{e}}{\mathrm{e}^{-}}\binom{v_{\mu}}{\mu^{-}}\binom{v_{\tau}}{\tau^{-}} \begin{array}{c}
0 \\
-1
\end{array} \\
& \binom{u}{d}\binom{c}{s}\binom{t}{b} \begin{array}{l}
+2 / 3 \\
-1 / 3
\end{array} \\
& \binom{\bar{v}_{\mathrm{e}}}{\mathrm{e}^{+}}\binom{\bar{v}_{\mu}}{\mu^{+}}\binom{\bar{v}_{\tau}}{\tau^{+}} \begin{array}{c}
0 \\
+1
\end{array} \\
& \binom{\bar{u}}{\bar{d}}\binom{\bar{c}}{\bar{s}}\binom{\bar{t}}{\bar{b}} \begin{array}{l}
-2 / 3 \\
+1 / 3
\end{array}
\end{aligned}
$$

|  | absorption | emission |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $l^{-} \rightarrow \nu_{l}$ | $W^{+}$ | $W^{-}$ |
| $\nu_{l} \rightarrow l^{-}$ | $W^{-}$ | $W^{+}$ |
| $l^{+} \rightarrow \bar{\nu}_{l}$ | $W^{-}$ | $W^{+}$ |
| $\bar{\nu}_{l} \rightarrow l^{+}$ | $W^{+}$ | $W^{-}$ |
| $u-$ type $\rightarrow d-$ type | $W^{-}$ | $W^{+}$ |
| $d-$ type $\rightarrow u-$ type | $W^{+}$ | $W^{-}$ |
| $\bar{u}-$ type $\rightarrow \bar{d}-$ type | $W^{+}$ | $W^{-}$ |
| $\bar{d}-$ type $\rightarrow \bar{u}-$ type | $W^{-}$ | $W^{+}$ |

With three generation of quarks the mixing matrix has to be modified to include also the third generation.

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left(\begin{array}{c}
d^{\prime} \\
s^{\prime} \\
b^{\prime}
\end{array}\right)=V\left(\begin{array}{c}
d \\
s \\
b
\end{array}\right) \\
V=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
V_{\mathrm{ud}}=0.975 & V_{\mathrm{us}}=0.221 & \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{ub}}=0.005 \\
\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{cd}}=0.221 & \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{cs}}=0.974 & \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{cb}}=0.04 \\
\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{td}}=0.01 & \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{ts}}=0.041 & \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{tb}}=0.999
\end{array}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

This is called the Cabibbo-Kobayashi-Maskawa matrix. The coupling strengths which we derived earlier are thus modified by the value of the relevant matrix element. For example:


### 3.4.8 The discovery of Higgs?

In the same way as photons couple to particles with electric charge and weak vector bosons to particles carrying 'weak charge' $\left(g, g^{\prime}\right)$, the Higgs particle couples to particles with mass. The coupling of Higgs to fermions and bosons is, thus, essentially proportional to the masses of the particles.

No Higgs particle has been found at low energies, which means that the Higgs particle has to be heavy.

## Higgs Production in Electron-Positron Collisions

In $e^{+} e^{-}$there are two main production mechanisms:

1) The Higgs strahlung: $e^{+}+e^{-} \rightarrow Z^{o *} \rightarrow H+Z^{o}$

2) $W$-fusion: $e^{+}+e^{-} \rightarrow W^{+}+W^{-}+\nu_{e}+\bar{\nu}_{e} \rightarrow H+\nu_{e}+\bar{\nu}_{e}$


The experimental signature of the Higgs particle is not always very outstanding. It decays primarily to heavy particles, which decays to lighter particles in a decay chain.

Some possible final states from the Higgs strahlung process:

|  | $Z^{o}$ | H |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 4 jets | $q \bar{q}$ | $b \bar{b}$ |
| 2 jets | $\nu \bar{\nu}$ | $b \bar{b}$ |
|  | $l^{+} l^{-}$ | $b \bar{b}$ |
|  | $q \bar{q}$ | $\tau^{+} \tau^{-}$ |

where a jet is a collimated flow of particles (see Section 3.6).

Background processes:
$e^{+}+e^{-} \rightarrow Z^{o}+Z^{o}$
$e^{+}+e^{-} \rightarrow W^{+}+W^{-}$
In addition to these backgrounds there is a large background from stong interaction processes.

In the LEP collider (Large Electron-Positron collider) at CERN electrons and positrons were collided up to energies of $\sqrt{s}=209 \mathrm{GeV}$. The dominant process at this energy is the Higgs strahlung process. The Higgs particle was not discovered at LEP, but we can use the absence of a signature to estimate the lower limit of the Higgs mass.
$s=\left(p_{e^{+}}+p_{e^{-}}\right)^{2}=\left(p_{Z^{\circ}}+p_{H}\right)^{2}=m_{Z^{\circ}}^{2}+m_{H}^{2}+2 p_{Z^{\circ}} p_{H}$
Production of the Higgs particle at rest corresponds to the mass limit:

```
\(p_{Z^{o}}=\left(m_{Z^{\circ}}, 0\right)\)
\(p_{H}=\left(m_{H}, 0\right)\)
\(\Rightarrow s=m_{Z^{\circ}}^{2}+m_{H}^{2}+2 m_{Z^{\circ}} m_{H}\)
\(\Rightarrow m_{H}^{2}+2 m_{Z^{\circ}} m_{H}+m_{Z^{\circ}}^{2}-s=0\)
\(\Rightarrow m_{H}=-m_{Z^{\circ}} \pm \sqrt{m_{Z^{\circ}}^{2}-\left(m_{Z^{\circ}}^{2}-s\right)}=-m_{Z^{\circ}} \pm \sqrt{s}\)
```

The negative solution is unphysical $\Rightarrow m_{H}=\sqrt{s}-m_{Z^{\circ}}=209-92=117 \mathrm{GeV}$
which was the low limit of the Higgs mass, set by the LEP-experiments.

## Higgs Production in Proton-Proton Collisions

The search for the Higgs particle has been continued at higher energies using collisions between protons at the LHC (Large Hadron Collider) at CERN. The major production mechanisms in prototn-proton collisions are through:
a) gluon fusion from which the Higgs particle is produced through a quark loop, predominantly a top-quark loop, since the top-quark has the heaviest mass.
b) Higgs strahlung from a process, in which a produced virtual vector boson ( $Z$ or $W$ ) emits a Higgs particle and becomes real.
c) $W$ or $Z$-fusion.

These processes are shown in the figures below:


Since the Higgs particle is extremely short lived it decays almost immediately through various decay channels, some of which are listed below.

- $H \rightarrow b \bar{b}$. The b-quarks then hadronize into jets of particles.
- $H \rightarrow W W^{*}$, where $W^{*}$ is virtual. This decay mode is the reverse of the Higgs strahlung process. Each $W$-boson will then decay into a quark-antiquark pair or into a lepton and a neutrino.
- $H \rightarrow \tau^{+} \tau^{-}$. The $\tau$-lepton is the lepton that couples the strongest to Higgs due to the fact that it is the heaviest lepton. Each $\tau$ then can decay to either a quark-antiquark pair or a leptonneutrino pair.
- $H \rightarrow Z Z^{*}$, where one of $Z^{*}$ is virtual. Each $Z$ can then decay either into a quark-antiquark pair, a lepton pair or a neutrino-antineutrino pair.
- $H \rightarrow c \bar{c}$, where the c-quarks hadronize into particle jets.
- $H \rightarrow \gamma \gamma$. This decay proceeds via a quark loop and is essentially the reverse of production mechanism a) with the difference that the gluons are exchange by photons.
- $H \rightarrow \gamma Z$. This decay is similar to the previous one with one of the photons replaced by a $Z$-boson.

Already the large number of possible decay channels gives a clear indication that the observation of the Higgs particle is extremely difficult and thus requires a tremendous analysis effort. Due to its extremely short lifetime the direct measurement of the Higgs particle is prevented but it can only be observed through the reconstruction of its decay products. The individual decay channels must be investigated separately and sorted out from a, in some cases, huge background.

On the 4th of July 2012 two of the LHC-experiments, ATLAS and CMS, announced that they both, in collisions between protons at 7 (8) TeV collision energy, had observed an excess of events at a mass around 125 GeV in their data samples from 2011 (2012). The signal has a statistical significance of about five standard deviations ( $\sigma$ ) above background expectations for both experiments. The search for the Higgs particle by the two LHC experiments was, so far, performed by investigating the following final states:

- $\gamma \gamma$
- $Z Z^{*} \rightarrow l^{+} l^{-} l^{+} l^{-}$, where $l=e$ or $\mu$
- $Z Z^{*} \rightarrow l^{+} l^{-} q \bar{q}$
- bb, from the Higgs strahlung process where the accompanying $W \rightarrow l \nu$ alternatively $Z \rightarrow$ $l^{+} l^{-}$or $\nu \bar{\nu}$.
- $W W^{*} \rightarrow 2 l \nu$.
- $\tau \tau \rightarrow 2 l \nu$.

The $\gamma \gamma$ and $Z Z^{*}$ channels are especially important as they allow a precise determination of the Higgs mass. Although the decay probabilities are not the highest, the Higgs peak is quite narrow, whereas the other decay channels lead to fairly broad distributions. In the case of the $\gamma \gamma$ final state, the Higgs mass is measured through the direction and energies of the $\gamma$ 's, whereas in the $Z Z$ decay the Higgs mass is extracted from the invariant mass of the lepton pairs produced in the two $Z$-decays. These two decay modes are the ones that provide the main contributions to the measured significance whereas the other either contribute very little or not at all.



Although the excess of events is observed in a mass range consistent with the expectations for a Standard Model Higgs, further investigations of the properties of the new particle has to be performed in order to make sure that they are consistent with the properties of the SM Higgs. Such properties are for example the spin, which should be zero, the parity, and the coupling strength to other particles, which should be proportional to their mass. Of especial interest is the measurement of the Higgs self coupling i.e. how strongly the Higgs particle couples to itself, since this provides information about the Higgs potential itself. This can be measured through a process in which a virtual Higgs boson emits a real Higgs particle. However, for this the linear collider is needed.

### 3.5 Are There More Families?

The question whether there are still more families of quarks and leptons is of fundamental interest. It might be hard to build accelerators that produce quarks that are significanly heavier than the top quark so we need to concentrate on the lepton family. Even if we in $e^{+} e^{-}$collisions do not observe any new heavier charged leptons we can not for that reason exclude the possibility that the next generation would have a lepton with a mass that lies beyond the reach of our accelerator. The way out of this problem is to study the properties of the $Z^{\circ}$ boson which can be copiously produced at $e^{+} e^{-}$colliders with a collision energy higher than the $Z^{o}$ mass. The width of the $Z^{o}$ resonance peak is due to Heisenberg's uncertainty principle inversely proportional to the lifetime of $Z^{o}$. On the other hand, the lifetime depends on how many decay modes the particle has. The more decay possibilities the shorter is the lifetime. $Z^{o}$ decays into either a quark-antiquark pair or a lepton pair. Since the mass of the $Z^{o}$ particle is 92 GeV it is kinematically allowed to decay into $d \bar{d}-, u \bar{u}-, s \bar{s}-, c \bar{c}$ and $b \bar{b}$-pairs but it can not decay into a $t \bar{t}$-pair since twice the $t$ mass is as high as $350 \mathrm{GeV} . Z^{o}$ can also decay into $e^{+} e^{-}, \mu^{+} \mu^{-}, \tau^{+} \tau^{-}$ and possibly into heavier lepton pairs if they exist and twice their mass is lower than 92 GeV .

Now, if we assume that the neutrino particles have zero mass or at least that their mass is very small then $Z^{\circ}$ can decay into all possible neutrino-antineutrino pairs, even those belonging to possible new generations. Every additional decay mode would have an impact on the width of the $Z^{o}$-peak. Precision measurements at CERN have shown that the width excludes further generations of quarks and leptons beyond the three we have already observed.


### 3.6 Strong Interactions

In finding an explanation to the short range nature of the strong force it was tempting to describe the interaction as an exchange of a massive field boson. From the measured widths of a number of hadronic resonance states it could be calculated that the typical lifetime for the strong decay is $10^{-23}$ seconds. The typical range of the strong force is $10^{-15}$ meters i.e. the size of a nucleon. From this it is straight forward to calculate that the exchange particle should have a mass around $100-200 \mathrm{MeV}$ and it had to exist in three different charge modes (positive, negative and neutral). In 1947 the $\pi$-meson was discovered with apparantly the right properties but it was soon realized that the spinless $\pi$-meson could not be the particle responsible for the strong force.

With the discovery of a large number of hadrons it became obvious that these particles could not be fundamental but had to be built out of more fundamental constituents. The quark model, which was introduced in 1963, was very succesful in explaining all experimentally observed hadrons but in the beginning it was not believed that the quarks were real particles. As it was experimentally verified that the proton has an internal structure, by deep inelasic scattering
experiments in 1969 (see Chapter4), then the constituents of the proton were called partons. The partons could later be shown to be identical with the quarks. However, there were two important problems with the quark model. Firstly, no free quarks have ever been observed but they always appear in combinations of three quarks (or three anti-quarks) or as quark-antiquark pairs. Secondly, the quarks didn't seem to obey the Pauli exclusion principle since in some of the baryons the spin of the three quarks pointed in the same direction $\left(\Delta^{++}\right)$. The solution to the second problem was to introduce a new quantum number, colour, such that the quarks can exist in three different colour states (red, green and blue) and the antiquarks have the corresponding anticolours. Thus, even if all three quarks in a baryon would have the same spin direction they would differ in the colour quantum number. Since no coloured hadrons have been observed the quarks must exist in combinations, which are colourless, or more accurately in colour singlet states.
red + blue + green $=$ color neutral (and similarly for anti-colors)
red + antired, blue + antiblue and green + antigreen $=$ color neutral
However, out of all possible color neutral states there is only one combination of quark-antiquark pairs and one combination of three quarks, which are in a colour singlet state. The colour singlet states are completely symmetric with respect to colour. For a meson $(q \bar{q})$ this colour combination is:
$1 / \sqrt{3}\{|r \bar{r}>+|g \bar{g}>+| b \bar{b}>\}$
i.e. if one could measure the color of the state one would find equal probabilty for it being $|r \bar{r}>|, g \bar{g}>$ or $\mid b \bar{b}>$.

The colour combination for a baryon (qqq) is:
$1 / \sqrt{6}\{|r g b>-|r b g>+|b r g>-|b g r>+|g b r>-| g r b>\}$

In the same way as the flavour of a quark can be changed by emitting or absorbing a $W$-boson, a quark can change its colour by emitting or absorbing a gluon. In order to do so the gluon must carry colour-anticolour. The gluons are massless vector bosons, just as the photon, and thus carry a spin of 1 .


The fact that there are three different colour charges means that the following transitions are possible

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text { red } \rightarrow \text { red } & \text { red } \rightarrow \text { green } & \text { red } \rightarrow \text { blue } \\
\text { green } \rightarrow \text { red } & \text { green } \rightarrow \text { green } & \text { green } \rightarrow \text { blue } \\
\text { blue } \rightarrow \text { red } & \text { blue } \rightarrow \text { green } & \text { blue } \rightarrow \text { blue }
\end{array}
$$

The corresponding gluon states can be obtained if we organise the colours and anticolours in triplets similar to what we did with the $\mathrm{u}, \mathrm{d}$ and s -quarks in chapter 2 , in order to construct the hadron multiplets. Thus this would lead to the colour-anticolour states shown in the figure below.


Just as in the case of the hadron multiplets there should be nine possible states i.e in this case nine gluon states. Out of these six change the colour of the quark whereas three do not. However, if we compare to the way the spin of a quark-antiquark system can combine to give a total spin of zero we find:

| Triplet | $s=1$ | $s_{z}=-1$ | $\mid \downarrow \downarrow>$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | $s_{z}=0$ | 1 <br> $s_{z}=+1$ |
|  | $\|\uparrow \uparrow\rangle+\downarrow \uparrow>$ |  |  |
| Singlet | $s=0$ | $s_{z}=0$ | $\left.\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right\rvert\, \uparrow \downarrow-\downarrow \uparrow>$ |

Thus, three of the spin combinations are in a triplet state with the total spin, $s=1$, and the three possibilities for the $z$-component, $s_{z}=-1,0,1$. The spin singlet state has total spin 0 , which
only gives one possibility for the $z$-component, $s_{z}=0$. In a similar way the gluons come in linear colour combinations, such that eight of them are in colour octet state and one in a colour singlet state.

The six color octet states which correspond to gluons that lead to a change in colour charge. can be presented as the following way colour mixtures:
$\mid 1>=1 / \sqrt{2}(r \bar{b}+b \bar{r})$
$\mid 2>=-i / \sqrt{2}(r \bar{b}-b \bar{r})$
$\mid 3>=1 / \sqrt{2}(r \bar{g}+g \bar{r})$
$\mid 4>=-i / \sqrt{2}(r \bar{g}-g \bar{r})$
$\mid 5>=1 / \sqrt{2}(b \bar{g}+g \bar{b})$
$\mid 6>=-i / \sqrt{2}(b \bar{g}-g \bar{b})$
whereas two of the octet states that do not cause any change of the quark colour can be written:
$\mid 7>=1 / \sqrt{2}(r \bar{r}-g \bar{g})$
$\mid 8>=1 / \sqrt{6}(r \bar{r}+g \bar{g}-2 b \bar{b})$

The ninth linear combination is completely symmetric with respect to colour and is thus in a the colour singlet state, which means that it doesn't carry any net colour and consequently it doesn't couple to the coloured quarks.
$\mid 9>=\sqrt{1 / 3}(r \bar{r}+g \bar{g}+b \bar{b})$

Thus, we end up with eight gluons in total.
The scattering of two quarks in strong interaction is described as an exchange of gluons and the probability that a quark emits or absorbs a gluon is given by the coupling strength of the strong force, which is $\alpha_{S}$. The fundmental unit of colour charge is defined as $g_{S}=\sqrt{4 \pi \alpha_{S}}$, similar to the definition of $g_{e}$ for the electromagnetic force and $g_{w}$ for the weak force:


Since photons do not carry electric charge they can not interact mutually. On the other hand the gluons carry colour charge and therefore they can couple to each other. This allows for threeand four-gluon vertices.


Due to the fact that the strong force only act between particles that carry colour charge, the theory describing such interactions has been called Quantum Chromo Dynamics.

### 3.6.1 More Feynman Diagrams

Consider the Feynman diagrams for some selected reactions.
$\pi^{-}+p \rightarrow \pi^{o}+n$


$$
\pi^{-}+p \rightarrow K^{o}+\Lambda^{o}
$$



### 3.6.2 Asymptotic Freedom and Confinement

Results from experiments where an electron was used to probe the inner structure of the proton revealed that the quarks seems to behave like free particles when they are close together. This is called asymptotic freedom. On the other hand, at larger distances they are strongly bound to each other, such that they can not escape from the hadrons. This is called confinment. The behaviour of the strong force is thus completely opposite to what is the case for the electromagnetic force, which gets weaker the more we separate the electrically charged particles from each other. The explanation to this difference is given by the self-coupling of the gluons.

An electron which travels through space is constantly emitting and absorbing virtual photons, which can fluctuate into electron-positron pairs. These pairs will screen the original charge of the electron such that the effective charge is decreased. As can be seen from the figure below the orientation of the electric field changes direction as we move away from the original electron. The further we move out the more electron-positron pairs will screen the field generated by the original charge. Consequently the strength of the electromagnetic force increases the more we penetrate the cloud of screening electron-positron pairs. It also means that the coupling strength will increase as we increase the energy of the probe, since we then better penetrate the screening pairs. We may say that the intrinsic strength of the electromagnetic force increases as we penetrate the cloud of screening pairs.

Screening


Due to similar quantum fluctuations a quark can emit and absorb gluons, which may fluctuate into quark-antiquark pairs. These will cause a screening of the colour field produced by the original colour charge exactly as the electric charge is screened by electron-positron pairs. The figure shows how the direction of the colour field changes as we move away from the original colour charge.

## Screening



(b)


It can, however, also happen that a gluon which is emitted from a quark fluctuates into two gluons. This gives a new situation where the colour charges line up in such a way that the colour field always point in the same direction, thereby giving rise to antiscreening. Whereas a gluon can only fluctuate into a quark-antiquark pair with the same colour-anticolour combination as the gluon, it can fluctuate into a pair of gluons with several colour-anticolour combinations. Consequently, the effect of the antiscreening will dominate over screening and the strength of the colour field will increase as we move further away from the original quark. In contrast to electromagnetism the coupling strength of the strong force will decrease as we increase the energy of our probe, due to the fact that the effective colour charge gets smaller the deeper we penetrate the gluon cloud.


From the discussion above we have learnt that the strength of the electromagnetic coupling
constant increases if we increase the energy of the probe and this can be understood as a consequence of screening. The strength of the strong coupling constant, on the other hand, decreases as we increase the energy of the probe, which explains why the quarks behave like free particles as long as they are close together (asymtotic freedom) and are strongly bound at large distanceses (confinement).


### 3.6.3 Unification of the Forces

The strength of the forces are at normal energies different by several order of magnitude as we have discussed already in the introduction. This is a consequence of the different influences of the particle clouds generated by quantum fluctuations due to the different forces. However, if it would be possible to probe the strength of the forces that we have discussed so far (i.e. the electromagnetic, weak and strong forces) at an energy at which these clouds of screening particles are penetrated, the strength of all forces should be equal. Calculations have shown that this energy is around $10^{16} \mathrm{GeV}$, which is thus the energy at which the three forces unify.

### 3.6.4 Hadronization

We now know that the quarks can not escape from the hadrons due to the properties of the strong force and that they always appear in either combinations of three quarks (antiquarks) as baryons (antibaryons) or in quark-antiquark pairs as mesons. What will then happen if we force the quarks to move apart?
Let us start by considering the electromagnetic field between two electrically charged particles. If we move these particles apart the field lines joining the two charges will start spreading out in space in a spherical fashion. The density of the field lines becoms smaller as the charges are separated and since the density of the field lines is proportional to the strength of the field, the force becomes weaker. This is consistent with our observations.


If we now instead separate a quark and an antiquark in a meson, we find that the field lines of the colour field do not spred out in space as was the case for the electromagnetic field. The reason for this is again given by the possibilities for the gluons to couple to each other, which means that we do not only have colour field lines between the quark and antiquark but gluons are also exchanged between the field lines and as a consequence of this they are kept together. This is illistrated in the picture below. As the quark and antiquark are separated the density of the field lines thus stays constant in a colour tube or colour string. This means that the force is constant whereas the energy in the colour string increases as the quarks are separated. Mathematically, the colour field is approximated by a massless relativistic one dimensional string. A $q \bar{q}$-pair which is created out of vaccum from a quantum fluctuation process, may tunnel through the barrier presented by the constant field inside the colour tube, with a certain probability. The new $q \bar{q}$-pair will be pulled apart by the field of the original quarks and the field which is built up between them will at some point cancel the original field in that region, and cause the tube to split up in two parts of lower energy as sown below. We are now left with two mesons instead of one. If the initial energy in the string is high the quarks continue to move apart and new hadrons will be created up to a point where the energies in the strings are below the mass of the lightest hadron. The situation can be compared to pulling a rubber band.


From experiments we know that not only mesons are created when the colour field breaks up but also baryons. This happens if, instead of a quark-antiquark pair, a pair of quarks $(q q)$ and a pair of antiquarks $(\overline{q q})$ are created when the string breaks. According to this a baryon is always created together with an antibaryon, which is in agreement with the conservation of the baryon number.


A gluon, which is emitted, can according to QCD obviously not escape since it also carries colour charge. The effect of an emitted gluon is that it will pull the colour string in the direction of its motion such that the string will get a kink. The kink will collect some momentum and increase the probability that the string breaks in this region. In such a case we will get three jets (collimated flows) of particles, two from the original quark/antiquark and one from the gluon.


### 3.6.5 Jets

Let us continue the comparison with pulling a rubber band. If we put marks along the rubber band and pull it from both ends we will notice that the marks at the ends will move faster than the marks closer to the middle. Obviously most of the energy will be at the ends of the rubber band as it will be also at the ends of the colour string due to the kinetic energy of the initial quark and antiquark. Consequently, the string will primarily break at the ends rather than in the center and most of the hadrons will be produced close to the original quark and antiquark such that we get collimated flows of particles, called jets, moving in essentially the same direction as the original quarks (or gluons). Intuitively one would assume that the particles in a jet carry the properties of the quark and that by studying jet production one could learn more about the quarks. However, some hadrons of low momenta will still be produced in the region between the original quarks and for that reason it is not completely unambigous if at least some of the particles should be assigned to one or the other of the jets. Nevertheless, this is the only way to study the properties of the quarks and the gluons.
Consider $e^{+}+e^{-} \rightarrow q+\bar{q}+g$ :


### 3.6.6 Testing QCD

## Electron-Positron Scattering

In electron-positron scattering the electron and positron annihilate into a virtual photon (or $Z^{\circ}$ ), which can decay either into a lepton-antilepton pair or into a quark-antiquark pair. According to the discussion above the quarks will hadronize and produce jets of hadrons. As the facilities which collide electrons and positrons (colliders) reached higher collision energies, clear evidence for collimated flows of particles (jets) could be observed in the experiments.


Since a quark may emit gluons it should happen that the final state also contained a gluon in addition to the quark and antiquark. This would give rise to events with three jets, which was also observed at DESY.


## Test of the String Model

Three-jet events can be used to test whether the theory of independent parton fragmentation or fragmentation according to the colour string model gives the correct description of the hadronization process. The model predicts that the strings connect the quark and antiquark with the gluon as illustrated in the picture below. When the strings break up, jets with high momentum particles will be produced along the directions of the quarks and the gluon. However, the string may also break in a region between the quarks and the gluon where it is not obvious whether the produced particle should be allocated to the quark jet or the gluon jet. These are mainly low momentum particles since the energy carried by the colour string in this region is small. Thus, it is expected to find additional low momentum particles between the quark and gluon jets but not between the quark jets since there is no string connecting the quark and antiquark directly.


This is exactly what was observed by experiments.


If instead of a gluon a photon is emitted, then the colour string will be pulled between the quark and the antiquark. In this case the additional low momentum particles will appear in the region between the quark jets.


## The Property of Colour Charge

How can we test experimentally whether colour charge is a relevant property of the quarks? If we consider production of a quark pair from electron-positron collisions, it occurs according to:

with the amplitude $A_{q q} \sim \frac{e e_{q}}{Q^{2}}$, where $e$ is the electron charge, $e_{q}$ the quark charge and $Q$ the four momentum of the propagator
This can be compared to the production of a muon pair from $e^{+} e^{-}$-collisions:

which has the amplitude $A_{\mu \mu} \sim \frac{e^{2}}{Q^{2}}$.
If we measure the ratio between the cross sections of these two processes one would thus expect it to be given by the square of the quark charge since $A_{q q}^{2} / A_{\mu \mu}^{2}=e_{q}^{2} / e^{2}=e_{q}^{2}$ and $e=-1$. The different quark flavours that can be produced in $e^{+} e^{-}$-collisions depend on the collision energy and in order to take all cases into account one has to sum over all quark flavours with masses, which allow them to be produced at that specific collider energy. Experimentally we do not observe quarks but have to look for events with hadrons in the final state. Thus, we want to measure:
$\mathrm{R}=\frac{\sigma\left(e^{+} e^{-} \rightarrow \text { hadrons }\right)}{\sigma\left(e^{+} e^{-} \rightarrow \mu^{+} \mu^{-}\right)}=\frac{\Sigma e_{q}^{2}}{e^{2}}=\frac{\Sigma e_{q}^{2}}{1}$ since $e=-1$
In a detector it is trivial to differentiate between a hadronic final state, which contains many particles, and a leptonic final state, which only has two particles.

We can now calculate the expected ratio for some specific collision energies. If the collision energy is below 3 GeV only pairs of the lightest quarks $u \bar{u}, d \bar{d}$ and $s \bar{s}$ can be produced. In the region 3 to 9 GeV also $c \bar{c}$-pairs can be created and above $9 \mathrm{GeV} b \bar{b}$-pairs can be produced in addition. Thus the expected ratio for:
three quarks : $R=\left[(2 / 3)^{2}+(-1 / 3)^{2}+(-1 / 3)^{2}\right]=2 / 3$
four quarks: $\quad R=\left[(2 / 3)^{2}+(-1 / 3)^{2}+(-1 / 3)^{2}+(2 / 3)^{2}\right]=\frac{10}{9}$
five quarks: $\quad R=\left[(2 / 3)^{2}+(-1 / 3)^{2}+(-1 / 3)^{2}+(2 / 3)^{2}+(-1 / 3)^{2}\right]=\frac{11}{9}$
Comparisons to experimental data show disagreement with these predictions. However, according to QCD the quarks can appear in three different colours and to account for these additional production modes we have to multiply by a factor 3 . Then we get:
$R=2 \quad$ for 3 quarks
$R=3 \frac{1}{3} \quad$ for 4 quarks
and $\quad R=3 \frac{2}{3} \quad$ for 5 quarks
The agreement is now considerably better as can be seen from the figure below but it is still not as good as expected. You may however, remember, that at energies above $\sim 3.5 \mathrm{GeV}$ also a $\tau$-lepton pair can be produced. Since the $\tau$-lepton is so heavy it can not only decay into lighter leptons but also into hadrons. This of course adds to the probability that hadronic events are observed and increases the cross section ratio for energies above 3.5 GeV . Taking this into account the agreement between measurements and expectations becomes quite good as can be seen from the figure below.


## Chapter 4

## Deep Inelastic Scattering

The most important experiments to provide information on the structure of matter are those where a lepton has been used to probe the inner structure of the nucleons. The basic principle is the same as Rutherford used in 1911 as he scattered $\alpha$-particles against a gold foil to investigate the structure of the atom. There are two big advantages in using leptons as probes. One is that they are so called pointlike particles i.e. they don't have any internal structure. The second advantage is that the scattering between charged leptons and charged quarks proceeds via electromagnetic and weak interactions which can be calculated to a very high degree of accuracy from the theory. Although the principle of scattering experiments is the same whether you want to investigate the structure of the atom, the nuclei or the nucleons, the energy needed is different.

The relation $\lambda=h / p$ means that:
small $\mathrm{p} \Rightarrow$ large $\lambda \Rightarrow$ small objects can not be resolved
large $\mathrm{p} \Rightarrow$ small $\lambda \Rightarrow$ small objects can be resolved

### 4.1 Kinematics

$e^{-}+q \rightarrow e^{-}+q$


Energy-momentum conservation:
$\left(p_{e}+p_{q}\right)=\left(p_{e}^{\prime}+p_{q}^{\prime}\right)$
$p_{q}^{\prime}=p_{e}+p_{q}-p_{e}^{\prime}$
${p^{\prime}}_{q}^{2}=\left(p_{e}+p_{q}-p_{e}^{\prime}\right)^{2}=p_{e}^{2}+p_{q}^{2}+{p_{e}^{\prime}}_{e}^{2}-2 p_{e} p_{e}^{\prime}+2 p_{q}\left(p_{e}-p_{e}^{\prime}\right)$
but $p_{e}^{2}={p^{\prime}}_{e}^{2}=m_{e}^{2}$ and $p_{q}^{2}={p^{\prime}}_{q}^{2}=m_{q}^{2}$
At high energies we can neglect the mass of the electron since: $m_{e}^{2} \ll E_{e}^{2} \Rightarrow m_{e} \approx 0$
$m_{q}^{2}=m_{q}^{2}-2 p_{e} p_{e}^{\prime}+2 p_{q}\left(p_{e}-p_{e}^{\prime}\right)$
$\Rightarrow 2 p_{q}\left(p_{e}-p_{e}^{\prime}\right)=2 p_{e} p_{e}^{\prime}$
But $p^{2}=E^{2}-\bar{p}^{2}$
$\Rightarrow E_{q}\left(E_{e}-E_{e}^{\prime}\right)-\bar{p}_{q}\left(\bar{p}_{e}-\bar{p}_{e}^{\prime}\right)=E_{e} E_{e}^{\prime}-\bar{p}_{e} \bar{p}_{e}^{\prime}$
However, $m_{e} \approx 0 \Rightarrow E_{e} \approx\left|\bar{p}_{e}\right|$ and $E_{e}^{\prime} \approx\left|\bar{p}_{e}^{\prime}\right|$
$\Rightarrow \bar{p}_{e} \bar{p}_{e}^{\prime}=\left|\bar{p}_{e}\right|\left|\bar{p}_{e}^{\prime}\right| \cos \theta \sim E_{e} E_{e}^{\prime} \cos \theta$ since the masses are neglected
Now the quark is at rest $\Rightarrow \bar{p}_{q}=0 \Rightarrow E_{q}=m_{q}$
$\Rightarrow m_{q}\left(E_{e}-E_{e}^{\prime}\right)=E_{e} E_{e}^{\prime}-E_{e} E_{e}^{\prime} \cos \theta=E_{e} E_{e}^{\prime}(1-\cos \theta)$
$\Rightarrow m_{q}=\frac{E_{e} E_{e}^{\prime}(1-\cos \theta)}{\left(E_{e}-E_{e}^{\prime}\right)}$
This is the mass on which the electron is scattering
Define the fraction of the proton four-momentum that is carried by the quark:
$x=\frac{m_{q}}{m_{p}}=\frac{E_{e} E_{e}^{\prime}(1-\cos \theta)}{m_{p}\left(E_{e}-E_{e}^{\prime}\right)} ; \quad 0<x<1$
which is a dimensionless parameter called the Bjorken scaling parameter. Since we know the energy of the incoming electron beam, $E_{e}$, and measure the energy, $E_{e}^{\prime}$, and scattering angle, $\theta$, of the outgoing electron, we can calculate $x$. Many measurements of this quantity will provide a distribution in the $x$-variable, which shows how frequently the electron scatter against a quark carrying a fraction $x$ of the proton momentum.

> Proton

Parton

| Energy | $E$ | $x E$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Momentum | $p_{L}$ | $x p_{L}$ |
|  | $p_{T}=0$ | $p_{T}=0 \quad$ if we neglect the primordial motions of the partons |
| Mass | $m_{p}=\sqrt{E^{2}-p_{L}^{2}}$ | $m_{q}=\sqrt{\left(x^{2} E^{2}-x^{2} p_{L}^{2}\right)}=x \sqrt{\left(E^{2}-p^{2}\right)}=x m_{p}$ |

The dominant $e p$-scattering at low energies proceeds via virtual photon exchange (neutral current process).


Since the photon couples to both $u$ - and $d$-quarks only the total $x$-distribution for the quarks can be measured and not for the $u$ - and $d$-quarks individually.

We have found earlier: $\quad \frac{d \sigma^{e e}}{d \Omega} \sim \frac{e^{4}}{q^{4}}$ for electron-electron scattering $\left(m_{\gamma}=0\right)$.
For electron-quark scattering we have: $\frac{d \sigma^{e q}}{d \Omega} \sim \frac{e^{2} e_{q}^{2}}{q^{4}}$
where $e^{2}$ comes from the $e \gamma e$ vertex and $e_{q}^{2}$ from the $q \gamma q$ vertex and $e_{q}=+2 / 3$ or $-1 / 3$.
The cross section for $e p$ scattering can be factorized according to:
$\frac{d d^{\rho p}}{d \lambda}=\sum_{q u a r k s} \int F(x) \frac{d d^{c o}}{d \lambda} d x \sim$
$\sim \sum_{\text {quarks }} e_{q}^{2} F(x) \sim \frac{4}{9} F_{u}(x)+\frac{1}{9} F_{d}(x)$ at a specific $q^{2}$.
where $F_{u}$ and $F_{d}$ are the probabilties to find a $u$ - or $d$-quark in the proton carrying a fraction $x$ of the proton momentum, if it is probed at a momentum transfer squared of $q^{2} . F(x)$ is called the structure function of the proton.

### 4.2 The Behaviour of the Structure Function

What can we expect the structure function to look like? Let us start by assuming that the proton contains just one quark. Then this quark will carry the total momentum of the proton i.e. $x=1$. But we know that the proton has three valence quarks, two $u$-quarks and one $d$ quark, and provided they don't interact they have to share the momentum of the proton such that $x=1 / 3$ for each quark. Due to the fact that the quarks continously exchange gluons and thereby momentum is transferred from one quark to another, each quark does not necessarily carry exactly $1 / 3$ of the proton momentum at each instant. This results in a momentum distribution around $x=1 / 3$. This is, however, again not the full story since a gluon which is emitted by a quark can fluctuate into a quark-antiquark pair (sea quarks), which at that moment also takes a share of the proton momentum. Since the sea quarks predominantly will take a smaller fraction of the proton momentum they will give contributions in the lower region of the $x$-distribution.

One quark: $\qquad$


Three quarks:


Three interacting quarks:


Valence quarks + sea quarks:


In the picture below the structure function is shown as a function of the Bjorken scaling variable, $x$, in different bins of the photon vituality, $Q^{2}=-q^{2}$.

$x$

### 4.3 Scaling

Assume that we want to use a beam of electrons to probe ('photograph') an object from the exchange of a virtual photon (electromagnetic interaction). If the object is an atom or a nucleon, we determine the distribution of the electric charge by scattering against the individual constitutents (the point charges). This would then provide information about the size of the atom and the nucleon, respectively. The scattering cross section can be written in the general form:
$\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega}=\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega}{ }_{\text {point }} \cdot|F(\bar{q})|^{2}$
where $\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega_{p o i n t}}$ is the cross section for scattering against the point charge and $\bar{q}$ is the momentum transferred between the incident electron and the target. $F(\bar{q})$ is in this case called the form factor, and describes the shape of the object probed. $F(\bar{q})$ can be expressed in terms of the charge density, $\rho(\bar{x})$.
$F(\bar{q})=\int \rho(\bar{x}) e^{i \bar{q} \cdot \bar{x}} d^{3} \bar{x}$
The scattering of the photon against a composite object, thus, has a cross section, which depends on the momentum of the photon, where the form factor reflects the shape of the object as seen by the probing photon at a momentum transfer $\bar{q}$.

As the momentum of the photon becomes very large it will penetrate deeply into the nucleon and according to the quark-parton model scatter elastically against a point-like quark in the proton. Since these have no extension there is no shape to be measured and therefore the cross section should not depend on the photon momentum. Consequently the structure function must be dimensionless and will only depend on the dimensionless scaling variable $x$. This behaviour is called scaling.

Early experimental measurements of the structure function at an $x$-value of about 0.3 did not exhibit any dependence on $q^{2}$, consistent with scaling. However, as deep inelastic scattering could be investigated in a wider kinematic range, through the advent of HERA, clear deviations from scaling could be observed, which can be seen from the figure below.

### 4.4 Scaling Violation

We have now realized that the proton is a particle with a very complicated structure of quarks and gluons. It means that when we probe the inner of the proton the probe does not necessarily scatter against a valence quark but could with a certain probability instead scatter against a sea quark.

Extended measurements of the structure function into a wider range of $x$ and $q^{2}$ revealed violation of the scaling behaviour, such that the structure function decreased with $q^{2}$ at higher $x$-values and increased with $q^{2}$ for lower $x$-values as shown in the picture below.


This can be understood in the following way. If the momentum of the photon is relatively low it will scatter against one of the valence quarks in a way that is described by the lowest order diagram. This diagram is of zeroth order in the strong coupling constant, $\alpha_{S}$, since the scattering is a pure electromagnetic process. (At higher energies also $Z^{o}$ exchange will contribute). In this case the process is very similar to the lowest order electron-electron scattering.

e

e

If the photon momentum is increased it may resolve details in the quantum-mechanical substructure of the proton such that what to a lower momentum photon appeared as a single quark will be revealed by a higher momentum photon to be a quark accompanied by a gluon, as in the diagram below. This process is called QCD-Compton scattering (QCDC) and resembles the Compton scattering process in QED.


An even higher momentum photon may resolve a gluon, radiated by a valence quark and subsequently fluctuating into a sea-quark pair. This process is called boson-gluon fusion (BGF) and is similar to photon-photon fusion in QED.


So, the momentum, which was originally assigned to a single quark as the proton was probed at low momenta must be divided between the quark and the gluon as the proton is probed at higher momenta. In case a sea-quark pair is resolved the fraction of the valence quark momentum taken by the gluon is split between the quark-antiquark pair and the more quarks we resolve in the proton the less momentum each of them will carry. Thus the higher the momentum of the probe is the more low $x$ quarks will be seen. This makes the structure function look different if it is measured at low $q^{2}$ than at high $q^{2}$.


If we choose a specific $x$-value in the diagram above we notice that if $x$ is $\operatorname{small} \mathrm{F}(\mathrm{x})$ is higher at large values of $q^{2}$ than at small values of $q^{2}$. On the other hand if we choose $x$ large, $\mathrm{F}(\mathrm{x})$ will be large for low values of $q^{2}$ and high for small for high values of $q^{2}$. Thus, we have scaling violation.

### 4.5 Charged Current Processes

Both the photon and the $Z^{o}$-boson, which are exchanged in neutral current processes, couple to $u$ - and $d$-quarks, which means that the structure function measured will give the probability to scatter against either of these two quarks. In charged current processes a $W$-particle is exchanged and we have the following reactions:
$e^{-}+p \rightarrow \nu_{e}+X$

$e^{+}+p \rightarrow \bar{\nu}_{e}+X$


Thus, by choosing either an incoming electron beam or a positron beam we can measure the structure functions of the the $u$ - and $d$-quarks separately. If we now integrate over the measured structure functions for the $u$ - and $d$-quarks, respectively, we find that the momenta carried by these quarks only add up to about half of the proton momentum. Consequently, there must be something else in the proton, which carries the rest of the momentum. The missing component is of course the gluon.

### 4.6 Comparison of Neutral and Charged Current Processes

For electron-electron scattering we have previously found:
$\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim \frac{e^{4}}{\left(m_{\gamma}^{2}-Q^{2}\right)^{2}}$
and for electron-proton (electron-quark) scattering the corresponding expression is:
$\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim \frac{e^{2} e_{q}^{2}}{\left(m_{\gamma}^{2}-Q^{2}\right)^{2}}$
If we now have a $Z^{o}$ or $W$-exchange instead of a photon exchange we get:
$\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim \frac{\text { coupling }}{}{ }_{\left(m_{Z}^{2}-Q^{2}\right)^{2}}$
$\left.\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \sim \frac{\text { coupling }}{}{ }^{4} m_{W}^{2}-Q^{2}\right)^{2}$
Note that the four-momentum of the exchanged virtual particle is not the same as the rest mass of the corresponding real particle (see section 3.1).

Since $m_{Z^{\circ}}$ and $m_{W}$ are large the interaction becomes weak. Only if $q^{2}$ becomes large compared to $m_{Z^{\circ}}$ and $m_{W}$, weak interaction is no longer suppressed compared to the electromagnetic interaction.

Processes where a photon (or a $Z^{o}$-boson) has been exchanged are called neutral current processes, whereas processes where a charged $W$-boson has been exchanged are called charged current processes.


The cross section for $e^{-} p$ scattering ( $W^{-}$-exchange) is in first approximation expected to be twice as big as that of $e^{+} p$ scattering ( $W^{+}$-exchange) since the proton contains two valence quarks of u-type but only one of d-type.

At small $Q^{2}$ values $\gamma$-exchange will dominate due to the suppression of the cross section by the high masses of the weak bosons. Since the mass of the photon is zero the cross section will vary as $1 / Q^{4}$. The charged current cross section is essentially flat in this region since $Q^{2}$ is small compared to $m_{W}^{2}$. As $Q^{2}$ gets of the same order as the mass squared of the weak bosons, the neutral- and charged-current cross sections become essentially equal because the processes then are dominated by $Z$ and $W$ exchange and their masses are almost the same. At even higher $Q^{2}$-values, the charge current cross sections start falling off again as $Q^{2}$ starts dominating over the square of the $W$-masses.


## Chapter 5

## Extensions of the Standard Model

It is clear that the standard model is not the final theory since there are several fundamental questions that this theory does not provide answers to, like:

- Why are there six flavours of leptons and quarks?
- Why are there three families?
- Why do we have a mass hierarchy of leptons and quarks?
- What determines the couplings of the particles?
- Will the forces unify?
- Why are the electric charges quantized?
- What is the field theory of gravitation?
- What is dark matter made of?
etc.


### 5.1 Grand Unified Theories

A natural next step following the successful unification of the weak and electromagnetic forces, was an attempt to include also the strong force into an extended symmetry group, which means that the known fermions, the leptons and the quarks, are incorporated into the same multiplet, such that leptons and quarks may transform into each other. There are several ways to do this and below we will only discuss the simplest one. Consider the following basic family structure for the first generation of quarks and leptons:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left.\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
v_{e} & \bar{d}^{r} \bar{d}^{g} d^{b} \\
e^{-}
\end{array}\right) \quad\binom{\bar{u}^{r} \overline{u^{g}} \overline{u^{b}}}{d^{r} d^{g} d^{b}} u^{r} u^{g} u^{b} e^{+}\right) \\
& \text {Charge -1 +1 } \\
& -2-1 \quad 2+1 \\
& \left.\left(\left.\begin{array}{c}
\bar{v}_{e} \\
e^{+}
\end{array} \right\rvert\, d^{r} d^{g} d^{b}\right) \quad\binom{u^{r} u^{g} u^{b}}{\bar{d}^{r} d^{g} \bar{d}^{b}} \quad \bar{u} \bar{r}^{r} \bar{u}^{g} \bar{u}^{b} e^{-}\right) \\
& \begin{array}{llll}
\text { Charge }+1 & -1 & 2+1 & -2-1
\end{array}
\end{aligned}
$$

Here all known fermions i.e. both leptons and quarks, are included into multiplets, which provide a natural charge quantization, giving $d=-1 / 3$ and $u=+2 / 3$. The first multiplet contains left handed particles and anti particles. Note that there is no left handed $\bar{\nu}_{e}$. The second multiplet contains right handed particles and anti particles. Note that there is no right handed $\nu_{e}$. Similar multiplets exist for the heavier quarks and leptons. The possible transitions within such a multiplet are illustrated by the matrix below:

|  | $d^{\text {red }}$ | $d^{\text {green }}$ | $d^{\text {blue }}$ | $e^{+}$ | $\bar{v}_{e}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $d^{\text {red }}$ | $g^{o}, \gamma, Z^{\circ}$ | $g^{r->g}$ | $g^{r->b}$ | $X_{-4 / 3}^{r}$ | $X_{-1 / 3}^{r}$ |
| $d^{\text {green }}$ | $g^{g->r}$ | $g^{\mathrm{o}}, \gamma, Z^{o}$ | $g^{g->b}$ | $X_{-4 / 3}^{g}$ | $X_{-1 / 3}^{g}$ |
| $d^{\text {blue }}$ | $g^{b->r}$ | $g^{b->g}$ | $g_{, \gamma, Z^{0}}$ | $X_{-4 / 3}^{b}$ | $X_{-1 / 3}^{b}$ |
| $e^{+}$ | $X_{+4 / 3}^{r}$ | $X_{+4 / 3}^{g}$ | $X_{+4 / 3}^{b}$ | $\gamma, Z^{0}$ | $W^{+}$ |
| $\bar{v}_{e}$ | $X_{+1 / 3}^{r}$ | $X_{+1 / 3}^{g}$ | $X_{+1 / 3}^{b}$ | $W^{-}$ | $Z^{\circ}$ |

The frame in the upper left corner includes transition between quark states, whereas the frame in the lower right corner contains leptonic transitions as we know them from our previous discussion. The $X$-particles provide transitions between quarks and leptons and vise versa. These particles are therefore called leptoquarks and they have to have masses in the range $10^{15} \mathrm{GeV}$ in order to give the right $W$ and $Z$ masses. Consequently they have not yet been observed. The following transitions are possible:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{e}^{+} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{X}_{+4 / 3}} \mathrm{~d} \\
& \mathrm{e}^{-} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{X}_{-4 / 3}} \bar{d} \\
& \bar{v}_{\mathrm{e}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{X}_{+1 / 3}} \mathrm{~d} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{e}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{X}_{-1 / 3}} \overline{\mathrm{~d}}
\end{aligned}
$$

A consequence of this is that the proton may decay according to:


Thus, the final state of a proton decay contains a positron and two photons. A calculation of the proton life time within this teoretical framework gives a value of $\tau_{p} \approx 10^{30 \pm 1}$ years. The Superkamiokande experiment, which looks for proton decays in a water volume containing $3 \cdot 10^{32}$ protons, has been able to set a lower limit of the proton lifetime of $5 \cdot 10^{32}$ years. This causes some problems to the model discussed above.

### 5.2 Supersymmetry (SUSY)

We believe that all particles gain their masses through coupling to the Higgs field and from the mass spectrum of the known particles we can estimate that the Higgs particle has to have a mass in the range $100-200 \mathrm{GeV}$. One problem of the Standard Model is that, due to quantum fluctuations of the Higgs field, the Higgs mass gets large corrections from vacuum polarization diagrams, as illustrated in the figure below, where $f$ stands for fermion.


In an experimental measurement the 'physical mass' is always measured, whereas in a calculation the 'physical mass' is obtained as a sum of the 'bare mass' and corrections from 'loop diagrams' such that the mass may be written as:
$m_{H}^{2}=m_{o}^{2}+\delta m^{2}$,
where $\delta m^{2}$ is the correction to the 'bare mass'.
It turns out that $\delta m^{2} \sim \Lambda^{2}$, where $\Lambda$ is some scale which defines the energy range over which the theroy is valid i.e. perturbation theory is valid. Although it is not obvious what the the scale should be, it is frequently chosen to be the Planck scale i.e. $10^{19} \mathrm{GeV}$. The Planck scale is obtained from the Newton gravitational constant, which in contradiction to the other coupling constants in the standard model, has the dimension of $1 /(\text { mass })^{2}$. The consequence of this is that the theoretical mass of the Higgs is pushed up to the energy scale of Grand Unification, $m_{H} \sim 10^{16} \mathrm{GeV}$. This is called the hierarchy problem.
If there are more massive particles in the unexplored mass range, these would inevitably appear in virtual processes at lower energies and give large corrections. Although bosons and fermions seem to have different behaviours, it might be that they are related on a more fundamentl level. In the theory of Supersymmetry, or short SUSY, it is assumed that every particle in the Standard Model has its supersymmetric partner, in the sense that the laws of physics are symmetric under the exchange of bosons and fermions. The SM particles and their SUSY partners differ in their spin by half a unit such that:

| Standard Model | SUSY partner |
| :--- | :--- |
| fermion (spin 1/2) <br> boson (spin 1) | boson (spin 0) = SUSY-fermion <br> fermion (spin 1/2) = SUSY-boson |

Note that the SM-bosons have spin 1 and are thus vector bosons whereas the SUSY-bosons have spin 0 and are scalar bosons.

The supersymmetric particles are generally called sparticles, and their names are more specifically given in the table below:

| Standard Model | SUSY |
| :--- | :--- |
| quarks | squarks |
| leptons | sleptons |
| photon | photino |
| gluon | gluino |
| W | wino |
| Z | zino |
| Higgs | higgsino |
| Gauge bosons | gauginos |


| Standard Model |  |  |  |  | SUSY |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| $u$ | $c$ | $t$ | $\gamma$ | H | $\tilde{u}$ | $\tilde{c}$ | $\tilde{t}$ | $\tilde{\gamma}$ | $H$ |  |
| $d$ | $s$ | $b$ | $g$ |  | $\tilde{d}$ | $\tilde{s}$ | $\tilde{b}$ | $\tilde{g}$ |  |  |
| $\nu_{e}$ | $\nu_{\mu}$ | $\nu_{\tau}$ | $Z$ |  | $\tilde{\nu}_{e}$ | $\tilde{\nu}_{\mu}$ | $\tilde{\nu}_{\tau}$ | $\tilde{Z}$ |  |  |
| $e$ | $\mu$ | $\tau$ | $W$ |  | $\tilde{e}$ | $\tilde{\mu}$ | $\tilde{\tau}$ | $\tilde{W}$ |  |  |

It is assumed that Higgs couple to supersymmetric particles in the same as to normal particles. Including the contribution from loop diagrams containing supersymmetric particles

the mass of the Higgs is modified such that:
$m_{H}^{2}=m_{o}^{2}+\delta m^{2}+\delta \tilde{m}^{2}$,
where $\delta \tilde{m}^{2}$ denotes the corrections from loop diagrams with sfermions. The correction $\delta \tilde{m}^{2}$ is also proportional to $\Lambda^{2}$ but since the radiative corrections from virtual boson and fermion loops are of opposite signs, there will be a cancelation of the large corrections.

This cancellation would be complete if the masses of a particle and its corresponding sparticle would be exactly the same, $m_{S M}=m_{S U S Y}$, which we know it is not since we havn't seen any sparticles yet. In order for the cancellation to occur at the right accuracy, giving a Higgs mass of about 100 GeV , the supersymmetric particles should have masses around the TeV scale or below. Thus, if they exist they should be found at a future accelerator which provides enough energy to produce such high mass particles. For a specific point in the parameter space of SUSY the mass spectrum looks like in the figure below.


It should be noticed that the heaviest sparticle is the gluino and the lightest squark is the stop particle. In SUSY models a minimum of two Higgs doublets are required. The gauginos $\tilde{\gamma}, \tilde{W}^{ \pm}$ and $\tilde{Z}$ will mix with the Higgsinos to form mass eigenstates called charginos and neutralinos according to:
$\chi^{o}=N_{1} \tilde{\gamma}+N_{2} \tilde{Z}^{o}+N_{3} H^{o}+N_{4} h^{o}$
where the N -coefficients are normalised such that $\sum_{i=1}^{4} N_{i}=1$. There are four chargino and four neutralino states as seen from the above figure. The lightest supersymmetric particle (LSP) is the lightest neutralino, $\chi_{1}^{o}$, which has to be stable. Some production mechanisms in protonproton collisions are shown below.


Each SUSY particle will decay in a cascade process into $\chi_{1}^{o}$, according to:


By observing the rotational velocity of galaxies it is possible to estimate the total mass inside a radius at which the velocity is measured. It turns out that the mass required for the observed velocity is much higher than the mass that can be observed by astronomical instruments. Actually as much as around $90 \%$ of the galactic mass is carried by these unobservable objects, which for that reason is called dark matter. A possible candidate for dark matter is the lightest neutralino, which is stable and doesn't interact with matter.

A problem with the SUSY theory is that the proton decay time comes out very short, whereas we know that most protons were created in the first fractions of a second after Big Bang and thus must have a lifetime comparable to the lifetime of Universe.


From the Feynman diagram above it is clear that the baryon and lepton numbers are not conserved in this decay. Instead the theorists have introduced a new quantum number, called $R$ - parity, which, if required to be conserved, would increase the lifetime of the proton such that it will be consistent with experimental limits. The definition of R-parity is $R=$ $(-1)^{3(B-L)+2 J}$, where $B$ is the baryon number, $L$ is the lepton number and $J$ the spin.

### 5.3 String Theories

Since field theories have been very successful in describing the electromagnetic, weak and strong forces, it seems very attractive to try to also formulate a field theory for gravitation. This
would provide a quantum mechanical description of the objects in Universe and would therefore need a combination of quantum mechanics and general relativity. General relativity states that space and time are bent through the influence of the gravitational force in a way which allows the motion of heavy macroscopic objects to be described and understood. On the other hand microscopic objects needs quantum mechanics for their description. In some extreme situations like black holes we have very massive objects which are at the same time microscopic and for their description we need both quantum mechanics and general relativity. It turns out that when we try to combine the two we get predictions which are unphysical in the sense that probabilities become infinite (i.e. so called singularities appear), if we assume that the fundamental partidles are pointlike, as in the Standard Model.

The reason for this is related to the Heisenberg uncertainty principle according to which energy can be created out of vacuum provided that it disappears again within a time that is given by Heisenberg's relation. As we have already mentioned this is called quantum fluctutations. In normal situations space and time are varying smoothly but if we look on a microscopic scale the quantum fluctuations will appear and distort the smooth space-time geometry. This is the situation that normal field theories, in which the fundamental particles are treated as pointlike objects, can not handle.

The string theory modifies the picture of the standard field theories by assuming that the fundamental constitutents are not pointlike partikles but small loops of one-dimensional vibrating strings. The smallest length of a string is given by the Planck length $\left(10^{-35} \mathrm{~m}\right)$, which makes the strings appear pointlike unless they are observed with a resolution better than the Planck length. The Planck length is given by:

$$
l_{\text {Planck }}=\left(G \cdot \hbar / c^{3}\right)^{1 / 2}
$$

where $G$ is Newton's constant and $\hbar$ is the Plank constant. The conflict between the general relativity and quantum mechanics has its origin in the behaviour of the space-time geometry at scales below the Planck length. Due to its length a string can not resolve structures smaller than the Planck length and is therefore not sensitive to the catastrophic consequences of the quantum fluctuations, which lead to infinities in normal field theories

Only vibrational patterns (the number of waves) which fit into the length of the string are possible and lead to resonance patterns, where the properties of each elementary particle corresponds to a certain resonance pattern. This is similar to the vibrational modes by strings of musical instruments, which correspond to distinct tones. The mass of a particle is equivalent to the energy contained in the string, which is given by the wavelength and amplitude of the string together with the string tension. Consequently, if we were able to calculate the allowed vibration patterns for the strings it should be possible to explain the properties of the elementary particles, which is not possible in the standard model, where these properties have to be introduced by hand. The energy of a string is a multiple of the Planck energy ( $10^{19} \mathrm{GeV}$ ). How is it possible that a string with an energy that is several orders of magnitude higher than the masses of the particles that build up our world, can reproduce these? According to Heisenberg uncertainty principle, strings are also subject to quantum fluctuations which, however, contribute negative energy and thus compensate for the energy content in the original string. This will lead to essentially a cancelation of the energy in the string vibration patterns with the lowest energy (equal to about the Planck energy) by the negative energy of the quantum fluctuations such that the net energy
will be low and the corresponding masses will be equal to the masses of the known matter- and force mediating particles. Each of the infinite number of vibration patterns should correspond to a particle state but due to the high string tension, all but a few states will have very high masses. These particles are, however, unstable and have decayed into lighter particles.

The equations of the string theory provide vibrational pattern which have properties similar to those of electrons, muons, neutrinos and quarks but also to those of the photon, W and Z bosons and gluons. Especially one vibration pattern corresponds to the properties of the graviton, which means that gravity is a natural ingredient in the string theory.

Consider the following Feynman diagrams:


The left hand diagram describes the interaction of two pointlike particles e.g. an electron and a positron, which annihilate and give rise to a virtual photon, that in turn can create a new particle-antiparticle pair. The right hand diagram illustrates how two string loops, representing the electron and positron, respectively, evolve with time (the direction of time is to the right as always). At some point they combine into a third loop, representing the virtual photon, which later on splits up into two new string loops.

In Feynman diagrams describing the interaction between pointlike particles, the point where the particles meet is exactly defined and this is where the interaction takes place. Thus, all the energy that is available for the interaction is concentrated in one single point. This leads to singularities for gravitational interactions as already mentioned above. On the other hand the point of interaction between strings is not well defined but depends on the position of the observer as indicated in the figure below. This smears out the interaction in such a way that the caclulations give finite answers.


Our Universe has three space dimensions but it can not be excluded that there are additional dimensions if they are tightly curled up so that they are confined within such a small space that they are difficult (or impossible) to observe. This can be compared to a thin water hose, which seen from far just appears to have one dimension, but at a closer look also has a small circular dimension. Why do we need extra dimensions? If a string is limited to vibrate in three dimensions, it turns out that some calculations in string theory give negative probabilities, which of course is unphysical. If, however, the string is allowed to vibrate in 9 dimensions, out of which 6 are curled-up dimensions, all the negative probabilities disappear. Thus, string theory requires that Universe has 10 dimensions in total, one time dimension and nine space dimensions.

As we already discussed, the vibrational modes of a string give the properties of the particles, and the string are vibrating in 9 space dimensions, which means that the geometry of the extra dimensions is decisive for the masses and charges of the fundamental particles that we can observe in our 3-dimensional world. However, these extra dimensions can not be curled up in any way but has to fulfill the requirements of a special class of 6 -dimensional geometrical shapes, called Calabi-Yau shapes. The present problem is that the exact equations needed to calculate the vibrational states of different Calabi-Yau shapes are so complicated that they have not yet been derived. Therefore, approximations have to be introduced, which leads to results that are not accurate enough to determine which Calabi-Yau shape is the one, that reproduces the properties of the known fundamental particles.
At present there are several different versions of the string theory but the belief is that they are just different formulations of a common 'theory of everything' (TOE). In the search for for a unifying theory (the so called M-theory), it has been realized that the string theory requires 11 dimensions (one time dimension and 10 space dimensions) instead of totally 10 dimensions as discussed above. The extra dimension becomes visible when the coupling constant of the strings becomes bigger than unity (where perturbation calculations are longer applicable) and causes one dimensional string loops to look like 'tyres' i.e. they become 2-dimensional with one dimension along the string and one cirkular (2-dimensional membrane). The question we may ask at this point is whether the fundamental constitutent can be extende objects in even more dimensions (p-branes). In principle it could be possible but nobody knows and to find the answer the complete and exact equations of the string theory has to be found.

## Chapter 6

## Experimental Methods

### 6.1 Accelerators

Particle accelerators use electric fields to accelerate stable charged particles. The most commonly used particles to accelerate are electrons, positrons, protons and antiprotons. The principle is to let the particle pass a pair of electrodes over which an electric field is applied at the moment when it passes.


However, a static field will only enable acceleration within a limited energy range ( typically up to 20 MeV ) and in order to reach higher energies it is necessary to use an alternating electric (a.c.) field, which provides a repeated energy transfer to the particles each time they are traversing an acceleration gap. Acceleration using varying electromagnetic fields is called RF (Radio Frequency) acceleration, since the accelerator is operated at frequences that are usually in the range of radio frequencies $(\mathrm{MHz}-\mathrm{GHz})$.

### 6.1.1 Linear Accelerators

Since only a limited amount of energy can be transferred in each step it is favourable to let the particles travel through a succession of accelerating elements or cavities. Such an arrangement makes up a linear accelerator, which is normally used as injector to all kinds of more complicated accelerator complexes. Normally, the acceleration cavities are arranged in such a way that the acceleration is performed in a standing wave mode. Typically, the electric field is driven by a voltage varying as a sinus wave, which means that the polarity of the field will have the right direction during half the period and the wrong direction during the other half of the period.


This means that the beam can not be continuous since then half of the particles would be decelerated instead of accelerated so therefore the particles must come in intervals which are matched to the sinus wave. During the time of the decelerating cycle the particles must be shielded from the field, which can be made by using shielding tubes (drift tubes), acting like a Faraday's cage, through which an outside field can not penetrate. The Figure below illustrates how a sequence of accelerating gaps (cavities) and drift tubes are arranged with respect to the sinus wave.


If the velocity of the particles is increased by every step of the acceleration, the particles will travel longer and longer distances during the acceleration time, which means that the lengths of the acceleration gaps and the drift tubes must be increased or alternatively that the frequency of the a.c. field is tuned to cavities of constant length.

The probability for one particle to interact and produce a reaction of interest is limited and to increase this as much as possible a large number of particles are collected into a bunch of particles which are accelerated together. In modern accelerators typical numbers of particles in a bunch vary between $10^{10}-10^{14}$ depending on what kind of particle is used. The beam of particles are kept inside a vacuum tube to prevent it to interact with the air. The maximum frequency of bunches would in the case of a linear accelerator be given by the distance between the cavities. In conventional cavities, based on e.g. normal conducting copper material, fields of a few MV per meter can be obtained. Thus an accelerator providing particles with a final energy of 50 MeV has to be $\sim 50 / 5=10$ meters long if we assume 5 MV per meter. It is clear that if we want to build accelerators for energies in the range of GeV or more, then they have to be several kilometers long. For example if we want to reach a maximum energy of 5 GeV the accelerator has to have a length of 10 km .

### 6.1.2 Circular Accelerators

The way to circumvent this problem is to let the particles pass the same cavities several times, which means that they have to be directed into a loop to come back to the same position over and over again. Such a machine is called a synchrotron. Thus, the vacuum tube is bent in a closed loop (frequently a circle) and a magnetic field is applied perpendicular to the bending
plane. The strength of the field has to be increased as the momentum of the particles increases, according to the relation:
$p=B e \rho$
where $p$ is the momentum, $B$ the magnetic field strength, $e$ the electric charge of the particle and $\rho$ the bending radius. The charge and radius are fixed by the particle chosen to be accelerated and the size of the accelerator, respecively. The obvious limitation of such a machine is the strength of the magnetic field that can be provided. Typical fields of normal conducting magnets are 1 Tesla and the largest accelerator of this kind provides 400 GeV protons. If instead magnets based on superconducting technology are used, a field strength of up to 10 Tesla has been reached for the LHC accelerator, giving beam energies of 7 TeV for the circulating protons.

What is said above is true for proton machines but not for electron machines, which suffer from other limitations. An electron (positron) which is forced to change its direction of motion will lose energy by sending out synchrotron radiation. The energy lost, $\Delta E$, is given by:
$\Delta E \sim \frac{E^{4}}{\rho m^{4}}$
where $\rho$ is the bending radius (in meter), E the beam energy (in GeV ) and $m$ is the mass of the particle. Thus, for relativistic protons and electrons of the same momentum the ratio of the energy loss is $\left(m_{e} / m_{p}\right)^{4} \sim(1 / 2000)^{4} \sim 10^{-13}$. This is the reason why synchrotron radiation causes no problems in circular proton accelerators whereas it sets a limit to what energy can be reached in electron synchrotrons. At a certain point the energy which is provided by the cavity at each turn is just enough to compensate for the energy loss and no further acceleration is possible. Since the electron mass is very small compared to the proton mass, only very weak magnetic fields are needed to bend the electrons and therefore this is not a limiting factor.

### 6.2 Colliders

### 6.2.1 Circular Colliders

In conventional accelerator experiments the accelerated beam is extracted and directed towards a fixed target of some material. This gives a high interaction probability since Avogadros number tells us that we have as many as $6 \cdot 10^{23}$ atoms per mol. (One mol is the weight in grams given by the atomic number). On the other hand we have seen in previous kinematic considerations that only a fraction of the energy carried by the beam particles is available for producing new physical states and the rest is needed to move the centre-of-mass of the system. In order to make the interactions more energy-efficient, colliders were built in which two counter-rotating beams are brought to collide in certain points around the ring. In the case of electron-positron colliders where the particles are circulating in the same beam tube but in opposite directions, the centre-of-mass energy will be twice the beam energy. In a proton-proton (antiproton) collider the collisions take place between the quarks inside the protons, which carry only a fraction of the beam energy.

The disadvantage with colliding beams is that the density of particles is much lower than in a fixed target. Typically one has $10^{10}$ to $10^{14}$ particles per bunch circulating in the beam tube. For this reason it is very important to focus the beams as much as possible in the collision point. Transverse beam sizes down to a few nanometers have been achieved at modern colliders.

The number of bunches which can be circulating in the beam tubes depends on the structure of the collider. If the beams are stored in one common vacuum tube, as one can do when colliding particles and antiparticles like electrons and positrons or protons and antiprotons, the the number of bunches in each direction is limited to the number of experiments divided by two. Thus, if we have two experiments only one bunch in each direction is stored, which means that they are colliding in two opposite points along the ring, where the detectors are positioned. If we would store more bunches we would also have collisions at points were there are no detectors and this is not what we want. If, on the other hand, the beams are stored in separate beam tubes, as must be the case for collisions between particles of the same charge or between different particle types, a large number of bunches can be stored and the limitation is given by the length of the vacuum tube where the beams have to be brought together in order to collide. This is because we only want to have one collision point in the piece of vacuum tube that is common to both beams and which is surrounded by the detector. In the HERA electron-proton collider one can store as many as 210 bunches of each particle type, which gives a collision rate of 10 MHz . In the LHC proton-proton machine there is only 25 ns between the bunches, which gives a collision rate of 40 MHz .

As mentioned above circular $e^{+} e^{-}$-colliders suffer from energy losses due to synchrotron radiation. The energy losses increases as the fourth potential of the beam energy whereas they only decreases inversely proportional to the radius of the collider. This means that at some stage it is no longer financially defendable to build larger circular $e^{+} e^{-}$-colliders. This point was reached by the LEP collider at CERN which had a circumference of 27 km and reached a maximum collision energy of about 200 GeV . In order to make a significant step in energy, which is motivated by the new physics that is needed to explain the mass generation of particles, the unification of the electroweak and strong forces etc., one has to get into the TeV range. This is obtained at the proton-proton collider LHC by using superconducting magnets which provide a magnetic field strength of up to around 10 Tesla, allowing a maximum beam energy of 7 TeV i.e. the collision energy will be 14 TeV at most. Although protons at these energies do not suffer from synchrotron radiation, proton-proton collisions have the disadvantage, compared to $e^{+} e^{-}$-collisions, that the intial state is not well-defined in the sense that we don't know the momenta and flavours of the colliding quarks. Further the final state contains a large background produced by the the hadronization of the quarks, which do not paricipate in the collision (spectator quarks). Obviously the precision of the measurements is suffering from these disadvantages, which complicates the extraction of tiny signals of new phenomena. In an electron-positron collider the energies of the colliding particles are known to a precision which is given by the requirements for having them circulating several hours in the collider. The final state is completely background free and provides the cleanest possible environment. However, the energy limitations of such a collider due to synchrotron radiation constitutes a major problem and makes a ring collider in this energy range unaffordably large.

One possibility to circumvent the problem with synchtrotron radiation and still have collisions between pointlike particles would be to use muons instead of electrons. Since the muon is about 200 times heavier than the electron the effect of energy losses due to synchrotron radiation is
about a factor $10^{-8}$ smaller in an accelerator of the same size. However, there is one obvious problem with muons and that is that they decay with a decay time of $2.2 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ if at rest. As we have seen from the example in Section 1.3.6 the lifetime of the muon increases significantly as it becomes relativistic. So, in principle it should be possible to accelerate a beam of muons if it can be made relativistic fast enough. On the other hand there are other complications in the production of muons (see Section 6.4) and collection of the muons into a monoenergetic beam of high flux. Although there is ongoing research in this area we may not expect a technological break through for many years yet.

### 6.2.2 Linear Colliders

Another way to avoid the problem caused by synchrotron radiation is to use linear electronpositron colliders as foreseen for the next generation facilities. In a linear collider the particle bunches are not reused, in the sense that they are brought to collide over and over again, as they are in a circular machine, but are lost once they have reached the collision point. Thus, the about $10^{10}$ particles per bunch have to be created instantly and the particle beams have to gain their final energy in passing through the acceleration structure only once. These are the major technological challenges. In order to fulfil the latter requirement much larger acceleration fields are needed than has been used for circular machines, in order to keep the length of the machine within limits. Intense work has been invested over the past decade to develop technologies which allow a significant increase of the field strength per unit length. Typical fields for cavities used in circular machines are around $5 \mathrm{MV} / \mathrm{m}$. There are essentially two ways to achieve higher acceleration fields.

The first one is based on cavities with normal conducting materials like copper or aluminium. If the cavities are made smaller i.e. the cavity gap is shorter but with preserved field strength, then obviously the field per unit length will increase. The distance between bunches is given by the length of the cavities and as a consequence the radio frequency has to increase with shorter cavities. The advantage of this technology is that there is no physical limit to what fields can be obtained. The shorter the cavities, the higher radiofrequencies and the higher field per unit length. For example at 30 GHz one can obtain $150 \mathrm{MV} / \mathrm{m}$. The disadvantage is the short distance between the bunches, which leads to a very high collision frequency. A further disadvantage is the smallness of the cavities; the hole through which the beam has to pass is of the order of millimeters, which requires a very good control of the beam position. So far one has not managed to keep such facilities operating for longer periods of time.

The second possibility is to use superconducting materials (pure Niobium) in the cavities and keep the present size of cavities (several centimeters long). Due to the size of the cavities such a machine can be operated at low frequencies (around 1 GHz ) and thus the distance between the bunches are significantly longer which has several advantages. With superconducting technology fields up to $40 \mathrm{MV} / \mathrm{m}$ has been achieved, which is close to the physical limit.

A linear electron-positron collider called the International Linear Collider (ILC) with collision energies up to 1 TeV is planned as a world wide project. It will use the superconducting technology for acceleration with the aim to achieve a field strength of more than $30 \mathrm{MeV} / \mathrm{m}$. For
a collision energy of 1 TeV it results in a total length of around 32 km , comparable to the circumference of LEP.

### 6.3 Collision Rate and Luminosity

The collision rate, $R$, in a collider is given by:
$R=\sigma L$
where $\sigma$ is the cross section of the process studied and $L$ is the luminosity, which is measured in $\mathrm{cm}^{-2} \mathrm{~s}^{-1}$. Luminosity is a measure of the quality of the colliding beams and can thus vary with time. Thus, the luminosity has to be measured continuously. This can be achieved by collecting the rate of a process which is frequently produced and has a well determined cross section. In $e^{+} e^{-}$-colliders normally Bhabha scattering ( $e^{+} e^{-} \rightarrow e^{+} e^{-}$) is measured and in ep collisions the Bethe Heitler process ( $e p \rightarrow e \gamma p$ ) is used. By determining the luminosity and simultaneously measuring the rate of any other process that we are interested in, we can calculate the cross section of that process. For two colliding beams of relativistic particles the luminosity can be written in the following way:
$L=f B \frac{n_{1} n_{2}}{A}$
where $n_{1}$ and $n_{2}$ are the number of particles in each bunch, $B$ is the number of bunches, $f$ is the frequency with which the bunches cross each other and $A$ is the transverse area of the beams in the collision point. The transverse particle distribution of a bunch follows a gaussian shape and the area is then given by:
$A=4 \pi \sigma_{x} \sigma_{y}$
where $\sigma_{x}$ and $\sigma_{y}$ are the widths of the horizontal and vertical distibutions. Normally the number of particles per bunch is not well known but instead there are methods of measuring the the electric current of the beam, which is realted to number of particles through:
$i=n e f B$
where $n$ is the number of particles in the bunch. The collision rate can then be expressed as:
$R=\frac{i_{1} i_{2}}{4 \pi e^{2}} \cdot \frac{1}{\sigma_{x} \sigma_{y} f B} \cdot \sigma$
If we for a circular electron-positron collider assume the following values:
$B=1, f=10^{6}, i_{1}=i_{2}=50 \mathrm{~mA}, \sigma_{x}=0.1 \mathrm{~cm}$ and $\sigma_{y}=0.01 \mathrm{~cm}$ we get:
$R \approx 10^{31} \sigma \sec ^{-1}$
i.e. $L=10^{31} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2} \mathrm{sec}^{-1}$

This is a typical value for previous circular $e^{+} e^{-}$-colliders, whereas typical luminosities for $p \bar{p}$-colliders are $10^{30} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2} \mathrm{sec}^{-1}$ and for $p p$ colliders $10^{33} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2} \mathrm{sec}^{-1}$. The future linear $e^{+} e^{-}$collider will have a luminosity of $10^{34} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2} \mathrm{sec}^{-1}$. The luminosities are mainly increased by
better focusing of the beams in the collision point and at the linear $e^{+} e^{-}$-collider the vertical beam dimension at the interaction point is as small as 5 nm .

Cross sections typically decrease as $1 / s$ (where $s$ is the collision energy squared). This means that our searches for new phenomena at increasingly higher energies automatically requires higher luminosities in order to collect a sufficient number of events over a reasonble time period.

### 6.4 Secondary Beams

Particles which are used for acceleration and for storage in colliders are stable and carry electric charge. However, it is also interesting to study interactions which involve other types of particles like photons and neutrions as well as muons, pions and kaons. Such particles can be produced by directing a primary beam of particles from an accelerator towards a metal target. From the interaction with the target nuclei, several new types of particles are produced in a mixture. By using a system of focusing magnets and bending magnets, particles of a specific momentum and charge can be selected, since the deflection in a magnetic field is
$p=B \cdot e \cdot \rho$
This relation can be fulfilled by particles of different masses as long as the they have the same momenta and therefore the secondary beam will remain a mixture of several particle types e.g. $\pi^{-}, K^{-}, \bar{p}$. In order to separate these one can use electric and magnetic fields in a combination. It can be shown that the difference in angular deflection of two relativistic particles with masses $m_{1}$ and $m_{2}$, and momentum $p$, passing a transverse electric field of strength $E$ and length $L$ is:
$\Delta \theta=E \cdot e \cdot L\left(m_{1}^{2}-m_{2}^{2}\right) / 2 p^{3}$
Since the deflection of particles in an electric field has a different momentum dependence compared to that in a magnetic field, a combination of electric field and magnetic fields will allow us to pick out a specific particle type of a specific momentum.

This method can only be used up to a few GeV since the deflection angle in a given electric field is inversely proportional to $p^{3}$. At higher energies so called radiofrequency (RF) separators are used. RF-cavities are normally used to accelerate particles. The RF-cavities are placed one after the other such that the particles enter them perpendicular to their electric fields. The radiofrequency is chosen such that the electric field changes direction as a relativistic particle passes from one cavity to the next. If the directions of two subsequent cavities are in opposite phase, the particle traversing these cavities will always see an electric field, which has the same direction and the particle will get accelerated transversely to its original motion. With a constant frequency the field has a certain direction over a constant time.

Consider a particle with originally no transverse motion entering the first cavity. From the transverse acceleration in this cavity it will gain some momentum. As it enters the second cavity it already has some transverse velocity and the electric field will cause it to travel a longer transverse distance in the time it takes for the particle to traverse this cavity. This means
that the second cavity has to be somewhat longer than the first one. Consequently, the third cavity has to be longer than the second and so on. Since particles of different masses will travel different distances under the influence of a given field during a given time, only a particle with a specific mass will be in phase with the chosen radiofrequency, and since particles with other masses will get out of phase with the frequency they will be decelerated. This provides an effecient method to separate particle types at high momenta.


An alternative method is to keep the length of the cavities constant and change the RF-frequency of consecutive cavities.

Photons are produced by slowly steering an electron beam circulating in an accelerator towards an internal thin metal wire, where the photons are produced via the bremsstrahlung process.


The photons will leave the accelerator, tangential to the beam orbit, through a thin window. The photons will not be monoenergetic but follow a specific momentum spectrum (bremsstrahlung spectrum).

Muon and neutrino beams are produced from a secondary beam of pions or kaons. When these are travelling down a long vacuum pipe they will decay in flight according:
$\pi \rightarrow \mu+\nu_{\mu} \quad$ or $\quad K \rightarrow \mu+\nu_{\mu}$
A pure beam of neutrinos can be produced by letting the secondary beam pass through a thick absorber in which the hadrons and muons will be absorbed. A muon beam of fixed momentum can be obtained using a system of bending and focusing magnets as described above for hadrons.

### 6.5 Detectors

### 6.5.1 Scintillation Counters

Scintillation counters have been used for a long time to detect charged particles in particle physics experiments. The detector consists of a chemical compound (organic or inorganic) that emits short light pulses after the molecules of the material have been excited by the passage of a charged particle. The light produced is collected via a so called light guide onto a photomultiplier tube (PMT) or a photosensitive silicon detector. The PMT has a photocathode from which electrons are emitted through the photoelectric effect. The electrons are accelerated in the electric field between several subsequent electrods, dynodes, inside the PMT. Due to the increased energies of the electrons, each electron will kick out a number of secondary electrons as they hit the surface of the dynodes. With a suitable number of dynodes an amplification factor of between $10^{6}-10^{8}$ is obtained before an electric signal is read out at the anode of the PMT.


Scintillation counter are continuously sensitive and provide very fast signals, which make them suitable for trigger purposes. A trigger is a signal delivered by one or several detectors, which announces the passage of a particle that fullfils predefined requirements concerning direction, momentum etc. The time resolution of scintillators is very good and a pair of them at some distance can be used to measure the flight time of a particle (time of flight), which together with a momentum measurement can be used to identify the particle (see Section 6.6). On the other hand the space resolution is given by the size of the counter and is thus not competitive with that of modern tracking detectors. Scintillators can also be used as active material in sampling calorimeters (see Section 6.5.2).

### 6.5.2 Tracking Chambers

## Ionization Chambers

This type of detectors are based on the property that charged particles create ionization when they travese a gas volume. A simple example of an ionization chamber is the Geiger counter. The Geiger counter consists of a tube filled with gas, where the outer wall is put on ground (cathode) and a central sense wire (anod wire) is given a positive voltage of several hundred volts. A radial electric field is created with a strength that is inversely proportional to the distance from the wire:
$E=\frac{1}{r} \frac{V_{o}}{\ln (b / a)}$
where $r$ is the radial distance of the track from the sense wire, $b$ is the radius of the cylinder, $a$ is the radius of the central wire and $V_{o}$ the applied voltage.


When a particle passes through the tube it ionizes the gas molecules along its trajectory, creating electrons and positively charged ions. The strong electric field accelerates the ions towards the cathode (wall) and the electrons towards the wire were they are all collected. As the electrons gain enough energy approaching the strong field around the sense wire they will create secondary ion pairs through the collisions with the gas molecules, such that an avalanche of charged particles develops. As the ion cloud moves away from the sense wire it induces a short pulse of current on the wire, which can be registered. If the voltage is chosen in a certain range the number of electron-ion pairs in the avalanche is directly proportional to the primary electrons created by the particle (proportional chambers).


$b$

c

d

e

## Multiwire Proportional Chambers

In order to construct a detector for the reconstruction of particle trajectories one would need to build a large array of proportional chambers. This, however, has the disadvantage that the chamber walls introduce a lot of 'dead' material in the detector which will cause scattering of the particle and thereby influence the trajectory. This problem can be circumvented by constructing an array of many closely spaced anod (sense) wires in a common chamber. Each wire will act as an independent proportional chamber provided that they are equipped with individual readout electronics. The position resolution will then be of the order of the wire spacing.


A typical separation between adjacent anod wires, $s$, is 2 mm , and between the anod wires and the cathod, $l$, about 1 cm . The radius of the wire is typically $10 \mu \mathrm{~m}$. Many Multiwire Proportinal Chambers (MWPC) can be positioned after each other so as to get many position measurements along a particle track. If every second chamber is rotated by $90^{\circ}$ with respect to the previous one the wires will be perpendicular to each other and the system will provide space coordinates. Each wire can stand a counting rate of several hundrad thousand per second, which allows for a data taking rate much beyond what was previously possible.

A charged particle traversing the chamber will thus produce electrons and positive ions along its path in the gas. These will drift along the electric field lines such that the electrons are approaching the anod wire and the ions the cathode planes. As seen from the figure the density of the field lines increases drastically close to the wire which is the region where the primary electrons will gain enough energy to create new electron-ion pairs. Each primary electron will create an avalanche which contains $10^{3}-10^{6}$ electron-ion pairs. This is called the gas amplification.

A particle which enters the chamber at $90^{\circ}$ will only fire one wire. However, in a realistic situation most tracks will have some inclination angle and consequently the primary electrons created along the track will leave signals in several adjacent wires. Since the primary ionization happens at different distances from the wires, the signal recorded from the wires are spread over a time interval that corresponds to the differences in drift time of the primary electrons. The desired signals are those arriving first.


## The Drift Chamber

In the drift chamber the distance between the anod wires are larger ( $5-10 \mathrm{~cm}$ ) than in the MWPC but the loss in resolution due to this is compensated for by measuring the time it takes for the primary electrons to drift from the track to the wire. In order to get a useful measurement a constant electric field is needed within a drift cell so as to get a constant drift velocity. Such a field is obtained by introducing a series of field shaping wires, which define the boarders of the drift cell. Since the drift time can be measured quite accurately the spatial resolution was improved from typically 2 mm in the MWPC to typically $100 \mu \mathrm{~m}$ in the drift camber. One disadvantage is that drift chambers are 'slower' than MWPC:s due to the longer time it takes for the electrons to drift to the sense wire.

The method to determine the drift time is to start a high frequency clock when the particle enters the detector and stop it when a pulse is registered at the wire. Since the drift velocities are well known for the various types of gases (gas mixtures) used in drift chambers, the corresponding distance can be calculated. Typically the drift velocities are around $4 \mathrm{~cm} / \mu \mathrm{sec}$, which would correspond to $1.25 \mu \mathrm{sec}$ for a drift cell of 10 cm . The counting rate would then be limited to $8 \cdot 10^{5}$.


Drift chambers have been built in many different shapes and sizes, and essentially every modern experiment in high energy physics uses drift chambers for reconstruction of the trajectories of charged particles. One example of a cylindrical driftchamber is shown below:


If the drift chamber is placed in a homogenous magnetid field the momentum, $p$, of the particle can be determined from the measured curvature of the trajectory according to the relation:
$p=B \cdot e \cdot \rho$
where $B$ is the magnetic field strength, $e$ the electric charge of the particle and $\rho$ is the radius of the measured curvature.

## The Time Projection Chamber

The most advanced ionization detector is the time projection chamber (TPC), which provides a large number of three-dimensional coordinates along a particle track. In that sense the TPC
could be called an 'electronic bubble chamber'. It combines the principles of the MWPC and the drift chamber. The detector consists of a large gas-filled cylinder with a thin voltage electrode in the middle. Typical dimensions in a large collider experiment are up to 2 meters in diameter and a length of similar size. In a collider experiment the beam tube follows the axis of the cylinder such that the collision point is at the centre of the cylinder. The electric field responsible for the drift of the electrons is paralell to the axis of the cylinder and the end plates of the cylinder are covered with detectors. The basic structure is shown below.



A closer look at the end plate (below) shows a wire grid plane followed by a plane of senseand field wires and below these a pad plane.

## Drift volume



Electrons drifting along the electric field lines will be collected on the sense wires and produce a signal according to the same principle as for the MWPC. The charge cloud at the sense wire
will induce a signal in the cathode pads below the wires. In order to prevent the positive ions created in the avalanche to enter into the drift volume the wire grid is swithced on at negative potential for a short period of time to collect the positive ions.

The drift time is measured by starting a clock at the time of the collision and stopping it as a signal is registered on a wire. Each wire is connected to a clock such that there will be a common starting time given by the collision time and individual stopping times for each wire. A track produced in the collision point and travelling the full radial distance through the chamber will thus produce signals in a large number of wires along its track. By measuring the drift times from the arrival of the ionization electrons at each wire we can extract the coordinates along the drift direction (z coordinate). For each point a mesurement of the charge deposition on the pads below a wire can be used to determine the coordinates in the plane transverse to the drift ( $x-y$ coordinates). In this way a large number of space coordinates are obtained for each track, where the precision in the z coordinate is related to the drift velocity and in the $\mathrm{x}-\mathrm{y}$ coordinates is related to the pad size.

## Semiconductor Detectors

The basic operating principle of semiconductor detectors is analogous to gas ionization devices. Instead of gas the medium is a solid semiconductor material. The passage of a charged particle creates electron-hole pairs along its track (instead of electron-ion pairs), the number being proportional to the energy loss. An externally applied field separate the pairs before they recombine such that the electrons drift towards the anod and the holes towards the cathode. The charge is collected on the electrodes where they produce a pulse whose integral equals the total charge generated by the incident particle. A schematic view of a strip detector is shown below.


High resistivity $n$-type silicon is used as the starting material (wafer), i.e. the silicon has been doped with atoms containing an extra electron compared to the pure silicon and thus electrons are the majority charge carriers. Diod strips of $p-t y p e$ are implanted, where the doping atoms
have one less valence electron compared to the base material and therefore they will provide an excess of holes, which thus are the majority charge carriers in this case. The ' + ' sign is used to indicate heavily doped materials. Onto the strips aluminium contacts are used for readout. An $n^{+}$electrode is similarly implanted on the opposite face. The electrons produced by the travesing particle will thus drift towards the $p^{+}$-strips whereas the holes will drift in the direction of the $n+$ electrode. The collected charge will be distributed over several strips according to a Gaussian distribution and by determining the centre-of-gravity for this distribution a position resolution of $5 \mu \mathrm{~m}$ can be achieved.

Another advantage of the semiconductor is that the avarage energy required to create an electronhole pair is of the order 10 times smaller than that required for gas ionization. Thus, the amount of ionization produced for a given energy is an order of magnitude greater resulting in increased energy resolution. They can be built very compact and have very fast response times. Semiconductor detectors have been used in high-energy physics in the form of pixeldetectors and microstrip detectors.

### 6.5.3 Calorimeters

Calorimeters are detectors, which are constructed with the purpose to totally absorb the energy of the particles they are intended to measure. Total absorption means that a material has to be chosen for which the interaction cross section is large, in order to keep the depth of the detector within reasonable limits. The most favourable case is if the same material which is used as 'absorber' can also be used to measure the deposited energy. This is, however, not always possible and instead one has to use a 'sandwich' structure in which absorbing plates are interleaved with energy sensitive materials. The materials which might be used in calorimeters varies depending on whether electrons and photons or hadrons are going to be detected. Typical energy sensitive materials are scintillators and liquid Argon.

## Electromagnetic Calorimeters

For the identification of electrons (positrons) and photons calorimeters play an important role. High energy electrons and photons mainly interacts via bremsstrahlung processes and pair production, respectively.

Bremsstrahlung occurs when a charged particle is forced to change its direction of motion. It will then be accelerated toward the center of the bending curvature and thereby lose energy by emitting a photon. An electron traversing the material of a calorimeter will feel the strong electric field of the atomic nuclei it passes, each causing a deflection of the electron (multiple scattering), and thereby the emission of a photon. Pair production happens when a photon experiences the intense electric field close to an atomic nucleus and create an electron-positron pair.

Consider a high energy electron entering a calorimeter. The incoming electron will emit a photon through the bremsstrahlung process. The photon will create an electron-positron pair
through the pair poduction mechanism. The produced electron and positron will both emit new photons via bremsstrahlung and so on. In this way an avalanche of electrons, positrons and photons will develop. This is called an electromagnetic shower. The shower development will cease at a point where the energy of the photons fall below what is needed to create a pair. Bremsstrahlung dominates the energy loss of electrons above a critical energy, $E_{c}$, below which ionization gets important. The critical energy is different for different materials.

The probability for electromagnetic interactions can be expressed in terms of radiation length. The radiation length $X_{o}$ is defined as the distance in the material at which the electron retains a fraction $1 / e$ of its initial energy, where $e$ is Euler's number ( $e \approx 2.718$ ). The development of an electromagnetic shower is illustrated in the figure below.


As can be seen from the figure the shower contains two particles after about 1 radiation length, four particles after 2 radiation lengths and consequently $2^{t}$ particles after $t$ radiation lengths. The energy is divided roughly equally between the electrons and the photons such that each particle carries an energy of:
$E(t)=E_{o} / 2^{t} \quad$ where $E_{o}$ is the initial energy.
The amount of ionization which is produced by the shower electrons is proportional to the total energy of the incoming particles and has to be measured. The response of a given calorimeter to two identical incident particles is different due to statistical fluctuations of the shower development. Also the thickness of the absorber plates in a sandwich calorimeter will affect the energy resolution of the measurement. Different materials can be used for the absorber plates but the most common ones are lead $(\mathrm{Pb})$ and tungsten (W). A typical energy resolution for an electromagnetic sandwich calorimeter is $\Delta E / E=10 \% / \sqrt{E}$.

Examples of electromagnetic calorimeters with homogenous materials, combining efficient absorption and light emission, are lead glass and various types of scintillating monocrystals, like Sodium Iodide ( $\mathrm{NaI}(\mathrm{Tl})$ ), Cesium Iodide ( $\mathrm{CsI}(\mathrm{Tl})$ ), Bismuth Germanate (BGO), Lead Tungstate $\left(\mathrm{PbWO}_{4}\right)$ etc. In lead glass detectors the Cherenkov light (see Section 6.6.3) is detected,
whereas in scintillating crystals, light is produced via a scintillation process. The best energy resolution is obtained with scintillating crystals, for which it is of the order of $\Delta E / E=$ $2-3 \% / \sqrt{E}$.

The transverse size of an electromagnetic shower is given by multiple scattering of low momentum electrons and is quantified through the so called Moliére radius, $R_{M}=21 \mathrm{MeV} \cdot X_{o} / E_{c}$, where $X_{o}$ is the radiation length of the material and $E_{c}$ the critical energy. The shower profile is different for electromagnetic showers and hadronic showers.

A shower produced by electrons (positrons) and photons of the same energy look the same and can not be used to identify the particles. However, an electron leaves a track in the tracking chamber pointing at the position of the shower, whereas the signature of a photon is a shower without any track pointing to it. Muons interact in the same way as electrons but since they are about 210 times heavier, the influence of the atomic nuclei on the muons is so small that they doesn't cause the muons to change direction significantly. They go right through the calorimeter without radiating photons.

## Hadronic Calorimeters

Since hadrons are much more massive than electrons they will not be significantly deflected by the atomic nuclei of the calorimeter and consequently they will not develop an electromagnetic shower. However, hadrons interact strongly and will undergo various nuclear processes as they traverse the material of the calorimeter. The final state products of these interactions will subsequently create further nuclear interactions and so on until the total energy of the original particle has been shared among so many secondary particles that they stop in the calorimeter and their ionization can be measured. The secondary particles are mostly pions and nucleons. A fraction of the pions are $\pi^{o}$ 's, which decay into two photons, which develop an electromagnetic shower. Thus, the hadronic shower also has an electromagnetic component. The hadronic multiplication process is measured at the scale of nuclear interactions length, $\lambda$, which is defined as the mean free path between two inelastic collision processes in a specific material.

The intrinsic limitations in the energy resolution of a hadronic calorimeter are due to the following:

- A sizable amount of the available energy is used to break up nuclei. Only a small fraction of this energy will eventually appear as a detectable signal.
- A certain fraction of the energy is spent on reactions which do not result in an observable signal, such as:
- production of muons and neutrinos, which escape detection or slow neutrons, which are absorbed by the absorber plates.
- nuclear excitation or nuclear breakup producing low energetic photons or heavy fragments, which can not traverse the absorber plate.

All this influences the energy resolution of the hadronic calorimeter.
Hadronic calorimeters are normally of sandwich type and in order to fully absorb the energy of the shower, the absorber plates have to be significantly thicker than for electromagnetic
calorimeters. The material of the plates might be stainless steel or Uranium. Uranium has the advantage that thermal neutrons, produced in the showering process, give rise to spallation processes, where the products contribute to the signal. Therefore the energy resolution of Uranium calorimeters is around $\Delta E / E=35 \% \sqrt{E}$, compared to $\Delta E / E=50 \% \sqrt{E}$ in the case of steel absorbers.

### 6.6 Particle Identification

So far we have discussed tracking detectors, which can, if placed inside a magnetic field, be used to measure the momentum and charge of particles. Calorimeters are used to measure the total energy of particles and together with the tracking information, electrons and photons can be distinguished.

For the investigation of certain processes it may be important to identify the particles involved. Particle identification relies on special properties of the different particles. For example muons do not produce showers in electromagnetic calorimeters and do not interact strongly. Thus they will penetrate large distances of matter, a property which can be used for their identification. Characteristic for electrons and photons is that they create showers in electromagnetic calorimeters, which is used to distinguish them from other particles. Electrons and photons can be separated from the fact that the electrons leave trajectories in a tracking device which is not true for the photons. Separation of hadrons is based on either time-of-flight measurements, the energy loss per unit path length of the particle (specific ionization) or the emission of Cherenkov light.


### 6.6.1 Time of Flight

From the knowledge of the particle momentum, the length of the particle trajectory and the time it takes for the particle to go from one point to another, i.e. the time-of-flight (TOF), the mass of the particle can be calculated through:
$m=\frac{m_{o}}{\sqrt{1-v^{2} / c^{2}}}$
$m_{o}=m \sqrt{1-\beta^{2}} \quad$ but $\quad \bar{p}=m v$
$m_{o}=\frac{\bar{p}}{v} \sqrt{1-\beta^{2}}$
where $\beta=\frac{v}{c}$;
with $v=$ velocity of the particle, $c=$ velocity of light
Good particle identification through time of flight measurement requires sufficient flight path and good timing resolution in the detectors used for the TOF measurement. For a flight path of 10 meters and a timing resolution of 300 ps one may separate pions from kaons up to 2.4 GeV , whereas pions and protons are separated up to 4.6 GeV .

### 6.6.2 Ionization Measurement

Hadrons traversing a gas will loose energy through ionization and atomic exitation. The energy loss per unit track length is given by the Bethe-Block formula:
$-\frac{d E}{d x}=\frac{4 \pi}{m_{e} c^{2}} \cdot \frac{n z^{2}}{\beta^{2}} \cdot\left(\frac{e^{2}}{4 \pi \epsilon_{o}}\right) \cdot\left[\ln \left(\frac{2 m_{e} e^{2} \beta^{2}}{I \cdot\left(1-\beta^{2}\right)}\right)-\beta^{2}\right]$
where $z=$ the charge of the incoming particle, $n=$ density of atomic electrons, $m_{e}=$ rest mass of the electron, and $I=$ average atomic exitation potential.
As can be seen from the formula the energy loss is to a good approximation proportional to the electron density in the medium and to the square of the projectile electric charge. It decreases as $1 / \beta^{2}$ for increasing velocity of the particle until it reaches a minimum, which corresponds to minimum ionization. We talk about minimum ionization particles. The energy loss then rises logarithmically, which is called the relativistic rise, due to the fact that the particles are relativistic. Finally, the energy loss starts levelling off to a constant value, the so called Fermi plateau.
The measurement of the energy loss, $d E / d x$, of a charged particle over many points along its trajectory, combined with a momentum measurement, can be used to determine the mass of the particle. The $d E / d x$ measurement is usually done in the tracking chamber, like a drift chamber or a Time Projection Chamber, such that for each position measurement also the charge is sampled. Due to the statistical fluctuations in the energy loss over small distances it is important to to record a large number of samples along the track.
The figures below show two examples of $d E / d x$ measurement as a function of momentum obtained from two different Time Projection Chambers. They illustrate the capability to separate pions, kaons and protons, depending on the precision in the measurements. In the second case a separation is possible even in the region of relativistic rise.


### 6.6.3 Cherenkov Radiation

In vacuum the speed of light is a universal constant (c), although it can be significantly lower than $c$ when light travels through some material. For example, the speed of light in water is only 0.75 c. Elementary particles, which have been accelerated to high velocities may exceed the speed of light in that material. Cherenkov radiation is produced when a charged particle travels through a dielectric medium with a speed higher than the speed of light in that medium. In such a case the particle will cause the electrons of the atoms in the medium to be displaced with respect to the nuclei along its trajectory such that a polarization of the atoms occurs. Photons will be emitted as the electrons returns to their equilibrium state as soon as the charged particle has passed. In the normal case these photons interfere destructively and no radiation is detected but if the particle travels faster than the photons they will interfere constructively and create an electromagnetic shock wave. This is equivalent to a a sound wave generated by a supersonic aircraft or a bow shock, which is generated by a boat travelling faster than the waves themselves.

This phenomenon is illustrated in the figure below, where $v=c / n$ is the velocity of ligt in a medium with refractive index $n$. The velocity of the particle in this medium is $v_{\text {particle }}$, such that $\beta=v_{\text {particle }} / c$. A particle emitting Cherenkov radiation must therefore fulfill $v_{\text {particle }}>c / n$. The angle between the direction of the wave front and the traversing particle $\theta$ is given by: $\cos \theta=\frac{(c / n) \cdot t}{\beta c t}=\frac{1}{n \beta}$
Since the refraction index $n$ is known and $\theta$ is measured, $\beta$ can be determined. If now the momentum of the particle is measured the mass can be calculated from $m_{0}=\frac{\bar{p}}{v} \sqrt{1-\beta^{2}}$


Cherenkov detectors are in most cases containers filled with some suitable gas. By choosing the gas and adjusting the pressure one can achieve that particles with masses below some value generate Cherenkov light but particles with masses higher than that value do not. This is, however, only true over a certain momentum range, which means that it is important to measure also the momentum of the particle for a correct identification of the particle. In this case the detector is used as a threshold device. Using several subsequent detectors with different gas pressures one may identfy different particle types over a limited momentum range. The Cherenkov light is usually detected by photomultipliers.

In modern detectors it is more common to use Ring Imaging Cherenkov detectors (RICH detectors). In such a detector the traversing particle produces a cone of Cherenkov light in passing a relatively thin (several centimeters) radiator. This light cone is detected as a ring on a position sensitive planar photon detector at some distance from the radiator. From the radius of the reconstructed ring and the distance between the radiator and the photon detector, the Cherenkov emission angle can be calculated. Since this angle is different for particles with different masses at a certain momentum, this detector can be used to identify particles over the full momentum range over which the particle momenta can be measured with sufficient accuracy.


## Chapter 7

## Cosmology

The table below summarizes the various phases in the evolution of Universe.

| Time (s) | Temp (K) | Energy GeV) |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $10^{-43}$ | $10^{32}$ | $10^{19}$ | Planck scale; needs a quantum field theory for gravitation to be described. |
| $10^{-36}$ | $10^{28}$ | $10^{15}$ | The electroweak and strong forces split up |
| $10^{-10}$ | $10^{15}$ | 100 | Radiation dominated Universe; soup of leptons, antileptons, neutrinos, antineutrinos, photons, W, Z, quarks, antiquarks and gluons in thermal equilibrium |
| $10^{-5}$ | $10^{12}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0.3 \\ & (300) \mathrm{MeV} \end{aligned}$ | The quark era; quarks combine into hadrons. The Universe consists of leptons, antileptons, neutrinos, antineutrinos, photons, protons and neutrons |
| 1 | $10^{10}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 0.001 \\ & (1 \mathrm{MeV}) \end{aligned}$ | The lepton era; $\gamma \rightarrow e^{+} e^{-}$stopped.Leptons and antileptons have annihilated $\left(l^{+} l^{-} \rightarrow \gamma \gamma\right)$. We are left with neutrinos, antineutrinos, electrons, muons, photons, protons and neutrons. |
| $\begin{aligned} & 10^{13} \\ & =5 \cdot 10^{5} \mathrm{yrs} \end{aligned}$ | 4000 |  | Start of the nucleosynthesis. Formation of H and ${ }^{4} \mathrm{He}$, neutral atoms through electron capture. Universe gets transparent to optical photons $\Rightarrow \underline{\text { Matter dominated Universe. }}$ |

As the quarks and antiquarks had formed nucleons at the end of the quark era at $t \approx 10^{-5}$ seconds, there was a small surplus of quarks over antiquarks. Since there are 3 quarks in a nucleon we have in the case that the number of nucleons existing today is $N_{o}$ :
$N_{o}=1 / 3\left(N_{q}-N_{\bar{q}}\right)$
where $N_{q}$ and $N_{\bar{q}}$ are the original number of quarks and antiquarks.
On the other hand, the number of quarks and antiquarks at the start of the nucleon synthesis must have been about the same as the number of photons, since the energy was high enough
that all particles were in thermal equilibrium. As the number of photons has essentially not changed we get:
$N_{o, \gamma} \approx N_{q} \approx N_{\bar{q}}$
$\Rightarrow \quad \frac{N_{q}-N_{\bar{q}}}{N_{q}+N_{\bar{q}}}=\frac{3 N_{o}}{2 N_{o, \gamma}} \approx 10^{-8}$
which thus gives a small surplus of matter over antimatter.
At the end of the quark era, protons and neutrons are produced, but all antiquarks are annihilated: $q+\bar{q} \rightarrow e^{+}+e^{-}, \ldots$.

In the early phase $N_{\text {protons }}=N_{\text {neutrons }}$ since:
$n \rightarrow p+e^{-}+\bar{\nu}_{e}$ and $p \rightarrow n+e^{+}+\nu_{e}$
both occured at the same rate. This means that $e^{-}, e^{+}, \nu, p$ and $n$ were all in thermal equilibrium. However, the small difference in mass between protons and neutrons played an essential role as the universe cooled off since it then became more difficult to produce neutrons than protons.
The ratio can be estimated from the Bolzman factor $N \sim e^{-E / k T}$, giving the probability of having a state with energy $E$ relative to having a state of zero energy.
$r=\frac{N_{n}}{N_{p}}=\frac{e^{-m_{n} c^{2} / k T}}{e^{-m_{p} c^{2} / k T}}=e^{-\left(m_{n}-m_{p}\right) c^{2} / k T}$
For $k T=1 \mathrm{MeV}$, which was the average energy of universe at that point (and having $m_{n}-$ $m_{p} \approx 1 \mathrm{MeV}$ ), we get $r=e^{-1} \approx 0.27$. A more careful analysis gives $r=0.14$.

As the energy decreased further we got: $n+p \rightarrow d$ with a binding energy of 2.2 MeV.
Now the nucleosynthesis started.
$p+n \rightarrow d+\gamma+2.2 \mathrm{MeV}$
$d+n \rightarrow t($ tritium $)+\gamma+6.26 \mathrm{MeV}$
$t+p \rightarrow{ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+\gamma+19.81 \mathrm{MeV}$
$t+d \rightarrow{ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+n+17.59 \mathrm{MeV}$
$d+p \rightarrow{ }^{3} \mathrm{He}+\gamma+5.49 \mathrm{MeV}$
$d+d \rightarrow{ }^{3} \mathrm{He}+n$
$d+d \rightarrow{ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+\gamma+23.85 \mathrm{MeV}$
${ }^{3} \mathrm{He}+n \rightarrow{ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+\gamma+20.58 \mathrm{MeV}$
After ${ }^{4} \mathrm{He}$ had been produced the nucleosynthesis was essentially finished since there are no long lived isotopes with $A=5$ (which is obtained if a proton or neutron is added to ${ }^{4} \mathrm{He}$ ) or $A=8$ (which is obtained if two ${ }^{4} \mathrm{He}$ fuse). Thus there are no stable nuclei with $A$ between 4 and 7.

A small amount of ${ }^{7} L i$ is created according to:
${ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+t \rightarrow{ }^{7} \mathrm{Li}+\gamma+2.47 \mathrm{MeV}$
but $\quad{ }^{7} \mathrm{Li}+p \rightarrow{ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+{ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+17.35 \mathrm{MeV}$

$$
{ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+{ }^{3} \mathrm{He} \rightarrow{ }^{7} \mathrm{Be}+\gamma \quad \text { but } \quad{ }^{7} \mathrm{Be}+n \rightarrow{ }^{7} \mathrm{Li}+p
$$

However, the bulk of the heavier elements was created later in the formation of stars.
After 200 seconds all neutrons are used up in the production of ${ }^{4} \mathrm{He}$.
$N_{n}=2 N_{H e} \quad N_{p}=2 N_{H e}+N_{H}$
$\Rightarrow N_{H e}=\frac{N_{n}}{2}=\frac{0.14 N_{p}}{2}=0.07 N_{p} \quad$ and $\quad N_{H}=N_{p}-2 N_{H e}=N_{p}-2 \cdot 0.07 N_{p}=0.86 N_{p}$ where 0.14 comes from the Bolzman ratio for $N_{n} / N_{p}$.
The ratio between the number of nucleons bound in helium and the total number of nucleons will be:
$\frac{4 N_{H e}}{N_{n}+N_{p}}=\frac{4 \cdot 0.07 \cdot N_{p}}{(0.14+1) N_{p}}=25 \%$
which is consistent with measurements.
Since the neutron has a life time of about 15 minutes before it decays, the universe must have cooled off to a temperature where the neutrons could be bound to protons to form deutrons within this time.
$p+n \rightarrow d+\gamma$
$d+d \rightarrow{ }^{3} \mathrm{He}+n$
${ }^{3} \mathrm{He}+d \rightarrow{ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+p$
The binding energy of the deutron is as low as 2.2 MeV .
If the temperature would not have decreased to the critical value within the decay time of the neutron, there would have been less neutrons left to produce ${ }^{4} \mathrm{He}$. If on the other hand the universe would have cooled off faster a larger number of neutrons would have been available for being bound into ${ }^{4} \mathrm{He}$.

### 7.1 Formation of Galaxies

Entering into the matter dominated universe after 500000 years leads to the formation of clusters of matter, which are getting increasingly denser due to gravitation and thereby attracting additional matter from the surroundings. In order for a gas volume to reach equilibrium the gravitational force must become balanced by the gas pressure. During the radiation dominated universe the pressure is dominated by the radiation pressure given by the energy density of the radiation.

As universe entered into the matter dominated universe, the photon radiation did no longer provide a pressure and the galaxies could more easily contract.

Most galaxies seem to be disc-like, which can be understood if the density clusters are rotating. Observation of rotation velocity $\Rightarrow$ need for dark matter.

### 7.2 The Creation of a Star

Around half a million years after the Big Bang the universe consists of a gas of Helium and Hydrogen (as $H_{2}$ molcules). Local clusters of gas will contract due to gravitation, which will develop into galaxies. These will in turn subdivide into gas clouds, creating stars.

The development of stars is goverened by the balance between the graviational attraction of the gas molcules and the gas pressure. Normally the temperture of a gas volume, which is compressed increases. However, as long as the hydrogen exists as $H_{2}$ molcules, the produced heat is used to produce a rotation of the $H_{2}$ molecules, which is then radiated as infrared radiation. This means that the temperature will remain at around 10 K . Some of the radiation will split up the $H_{2}$ molecules into some ionized plasma, which becomes non-transparent to the radiation.
$\Rightarrow$ protostar
With increasing temperature, fusion processes will occur:
$p+p \rightarrow d+e^{+}+\nu_{e}$
$p+d \rightarrow{ }^{3} \mathrm{He}+\gamma$
${ }^{3} \mathrm{He}+{ }^{3} \mathrm{He} \rightarrow{ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+p+p$
The protostar starts shining and becomes a star. An equilibrium is reached where the produced energy increases the temperature and consequently the pressure such that the compression stops. This is a self adjusting system in the sense that if the fusion increases the temperature, the increased pressure will blow up the star, which is then cooled off and the fusion processes are slowed down. This leads to contraction and an increase of the fusion reactions.

### 7.3 The Death of a Star

As the hydrogen fuel in the centre of the star is used up the fusion continues in the outer regions of the star, which blow up to a red giant. This is due to the fact that the energy is not only transported outwards by radiation but also by matter. The centre of the star will contract and the He -nuclei start to combine into ${ }^{12} \mathrm{C}$-nuclei.
${ }^{4} \mathrm{He}+{ }^{4} \mathrm{He} \rightarrow{ }^{8} \mathrm{Be}+\gamma$
${ }^{8} \mathrm{Be}+{ }^{4} \mathrm{He} \rightarrow{ }^{12} \mathrm{C}+\gamma$
${ }^{12} \mathrm{C}+{ }^{4} \mathrm{He} \rightarrow{ }^{16} \mathrm{O}+\gamma$
After around $60 \cdot 10^{6}$ years the inner of the star is mainly carbon and oxygen. The outer parts have drifted away and form planetic nebulosae. When the helium is used up the star starts contracting and turns into a white dwarf. At high enough temperatures the electron gas behaves like any other ideal gas but when the temperature decreases the Pauli principle has to be fulfilled. When all the lower energy states have been occupied the gas can not get any colder and it is said
that the electron gas is degenerate. If the electron gas collapses, the electrons will react with the protons according to:
$e^{-}+p \rightarrow n+\nu_{e}$
The neutrinos will leave the star, which develops into a neutron star.
If the mass is big enough carbon and neon will produce magnesium in about 100 years, neon and oxygen will produce silicon in about 1 year, and silicon and neon will produce ${ }^{56} \mathrm{Fe},{ }^{56} \mathrm{Co}$ and ${ }^{56} \mathrm{Ni}$. After that the fusion processes will not be able to create more energy and the core of the star collapses in about 0.1 seconds. The outer parts fall inwards and bounce out again, in a gigantic collision, and the star dies as a supernova. A large number of neutrinos are emitted due to the reaction:
$e^{-}+p \rightarrow n+\nu_{e}$
in the centre of the star. The neutron star remaining at the centre of the supernova frequently will rotate with a large frequency and is therefore called pulsar. If the chock wave created from the supernova explosion is not able to turn the implosion of the star into an explosion, the star will collapse into a black hole. This happens if the mass of the star is bigger than 30 sun masses.

## Chapter 8

## Appendix A

## The Double Slit Experiment; an Intuitive Discussion

In an attempt to understand the results of the double slit experiment we will discuss what happens when we use bullets, water waves and electrons, respectively.

1) Bullets: If we fire a machine gun randomly toward a wall with a slit and look how the pattern caused by the bullets on a wall behind looks like, we find that it is essentially an image of the slit. However, since some of the bullets are scattered against the edges of the slit the image is not sharp but somewhat diffuse. The distribution of the bullets follows a Gaussian shape.

If we now open up another slit in the first wall and again fire the machine gun randomly against it we will find that after some while approximately the same number of bullets have passed the two slits. We have got two Gaussian distributions, which if the slits are sufficiently apart can be seen as separate distributions. However, if they are close enough only one distribution appear but the number of bullets contained in this distribution is the same as the sum of the bullets going through the two slits.
2) Water waves: If we let a wave front approach the wall, a narrow slit will act as a point like source and the water which passes the slit will propagate in circular patterns from the slit. The distribution of the energy carried by the waves and hitting the second wall will show a similar shape (a Gaussian shape) as for the bullets.

With two slits we will have two point sources but the result we obtain is completely different from what we got with the bullets. The reason is that a wave exhibits a motion that varies with time beween its crest and trough. The waves from the two slits overlap and for every point on the second wall the amplitudes of the two waves will both contribute and cause an interference pattern to happen. If both are in their crest or trough simultaneously, the amplitudes will add up but if one is in its crest and the other in its trough, they will cancel partly or completely, giving an interference pattern with minima and maxima. However, the pattern we find with both slits open is not the sum of patterns we find with one slit open at a time.

So we have seen that the results from this experiment are completely different if we treat the source as particles or waves.
3) Electrons: If we now redo the experiment with electrons using a phosphorous screen to detect the flashes from electrons hitting the screen, after having passed the wall with the slits. The electrons are obviously particles with a mass and electric charge that can be experimentally determined. Thus, we would expect to get the same result from the two slit experiment as for the bullets. To our great surprise we however see an interference pattern. How does this come about? In order to understand this we have to 'understand' how Quantum Mechanics works.

In the macroscopic world, described by Newtonian mechanics, a particle, where the starting conditions are known, will follow a well-defined path such that its position at any later time can be calculated exactly. In micro cosmos, described by Quantum Mechanics, the situation is completely different. Heisenberg tells us that the position and velocity of an object can not be measured with infinite accuracy simultaneously. The precision is limited by Planck's constant, $\hbar$, due to the relation:
$\Delta v \cdot \Delta x \geq \frac{\hbar}{m}$,
where $m$ is the mass of the object. If we rewrite this expression we become:
$m \cdot \Delta v \cdot \Delta x \geq \hbar$.
$m \cdot v$ is, however, the momentum, $p$, of the object and thus:
$\Delta p \cdot \Delta x \geq \hbar$
i.e. if we know the momentum with infinite accuracy the position is completely undetermined and vice versa.

Normally light is described as a wave motion. However, when Einstein looked for an explanation of the photoelectric effect he realized that this required that light had to be regarded as quanta of energy, photons, which knocked out electrons when hitting an atom i.e. similar to the behaviour of particles. In a similar way electrons may be considered to perform a wave motion in some situations. This is called the particle-wave duality.
The energy of light (photons) can be written as $E=\hbar \cdot \nu$, where $\nu$ is the frequency of the wave motion. This is equivalent to $E=\frac{\hbar}{\lambda}$, where $\lambda$ is the wave length, and thus we have $E \cdot \lambda=\hbar$. But for massless particles $E=p$ and consequently $\Delta E=\Delta p$. The length of the wave, $\lambda$ can equally well be written as $\Delta x$ (it is only a matter of which notation you are using). Thus, we have the product $\Delta p \cdot \Delta x$, which according to Heisenberg must be $\geq \hbar$. From this follows that a photon or an electron travelling through space without being disturbed (i.e. $\Delta p=0$ ), corresponds to a wave extending infinitely through space and therefore the wavelength i.e. the uncertainty in position is infinitely big.

If we apply this to the double slit experiment, we would expect to observe similar interference patterns for electrons as for light waves, which is exactly what we do.
Can we investigate what the origin of the interference is experimentally? We may fire off electrons one by one to find out whether the interference pattern occur due to the interaction of one electron passing through the slit number 1 with one that passes through the slit number 2. Only after having measured where one electron ends up we fire off the next electron and repeat the observation, and so on. By fireing off one electron at a time we would thus with our assumption not expect to find any interference pattern. However, after having fired off enough electrons we will discover that the distribution of electrons still exhibits an interference pattern. This result thus disproves the hypothesis we made in the beginning of this paragraph.
Could it be that an electron somehow is going through both slits simultaneously? If we try to observe this we necessarily have to interact with the electron by for example shining light on it.

A macroscopic object would not be much affected by the light but for a tiny quantum particle it may have a big effect as we will see. We thus place a small light bulb behind the wall with the slits to see which path the electron is following. What we will observe is that every electron is acting 'normal' in the sense that approximately half of the electrons are going through the upper slit and half of them are going through the lower slit. And to our surprise the interference patter has disappeared. This is really weird!!! Could the reason for this be the disturbance that we have introduced by shooting light against the electrons?

In order to minimize the disturbance caused by the light we are using to shine on the electron, we may turn down its intensity. First no interference pattern is observed but as the intensity of the light has been decreased to the point where it is so faint that we miss some of the electrons the interference pattern starts coming back. Thus, this investigation was of no help in understanding what is going on.

The second way of minimizing the disturbance is to decrease the energy of the light by increasing its wavelength. In the beginning everything seems to work as we expect, half of the electrons are going through the one slit and the other half going through the other one. However, the ability to resolve two positions in space depends on the wavelength of the light we are using for our observation as we have shown above. Although we will still be able to observe the electrons, at some point the wavelength of the light is getting too long for us to tell through which slit the electron went and at that point we will get the interference pattern back.

Thus, the conclusion is that there is no way of performing an experiment that can explain what is happening to the electrons when they pass the slits. Feynman's interpretation of the phenomenon was that, in contrast to Newton mechanics, it is not possible to predict what path a particle will take from its starting point to its final destination even if we know the starting conditions. In fact it will take every possible path simultaneously, which means that the paths of one and the same electron through slit 1 will interfere with its paths through slit 2. Although this sounds completely crazy Feynman was able to show mathematically, by taking all possible paths into account, that a probability for a particle, starting at a position A to arrive at a position B, can be calculated. Since the number of paths is infinite the calculations are somewhat complicated but the result agrees with the observation. This description was generalized to apply to all systems such that the probability of a system to evolve from an initial state to a final one is the sum of all possible evolutions (Cf. the summation of Feynman diagrams in chapter 3.2.5). Feynman once made the following statement: 'I think I can safely say that nobody understands quantum mechanics', so if you are confused you are at least in very good company.

